

## Your Owner's Manual



Digital version available on the Internet

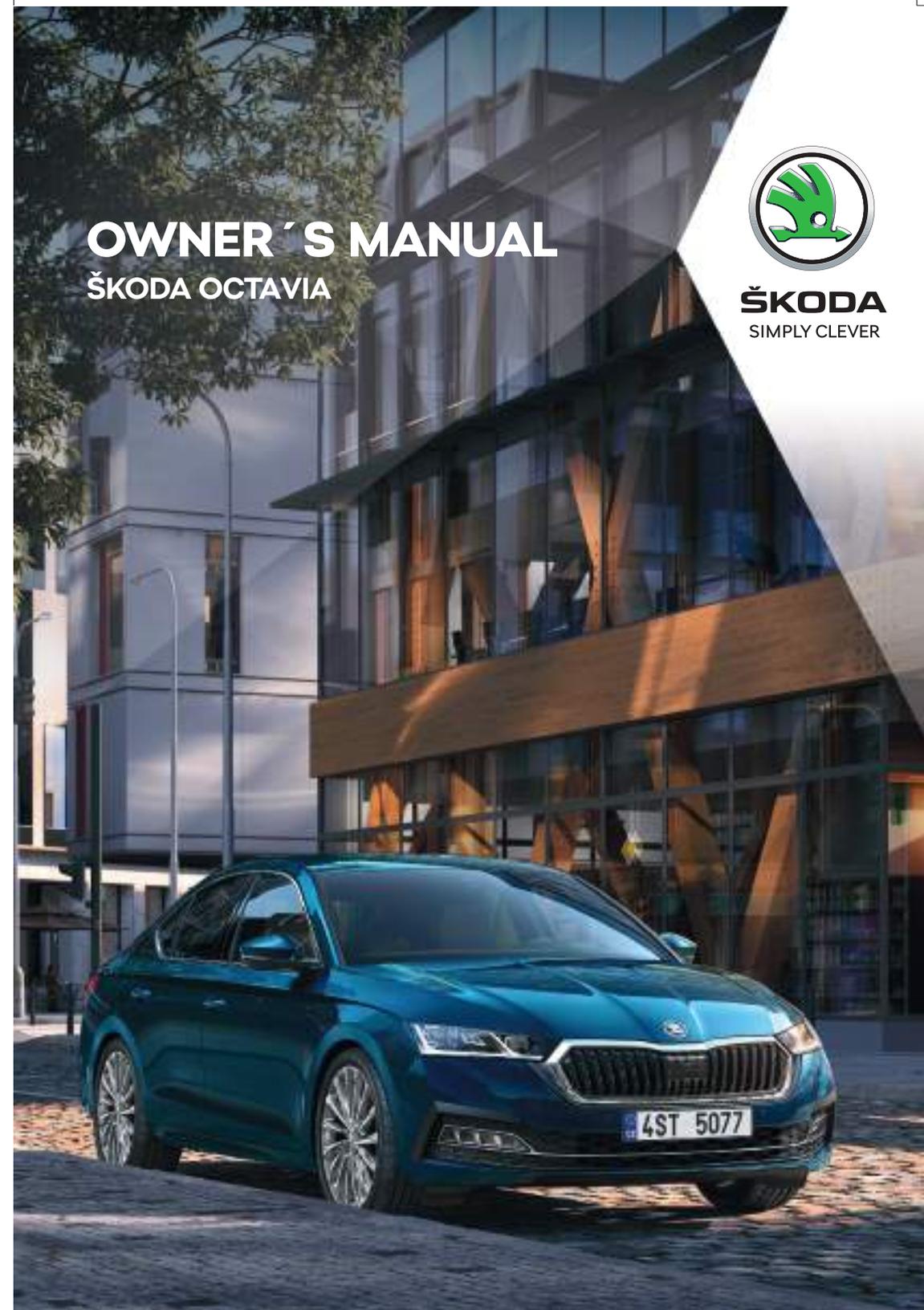
<http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>



ŠKODA OCTAVIA 01.2020  
Angličtina/English



5E3012720AB



**Documentation of vehicle delivery**

**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

**Date of vehicle delivery** \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| ŠKODA Partner                     |
| Stamp and signature of the vendor |

|  |
|--|
| I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me. |
| Signature of the customer  |

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

**YES**

**NO**

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty<sup>a)</sup>

**Years:** \_\_\_\_\_

or

**km:** \_\_\_\_\_

or

**Miles:** \_\_\_\_\_

<sup>a)</sup> Depending on which comes first.



Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2020

## Vehicle owner

### First Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

belongs to:

Title, name/company:

-----

Address:

-----

-----

Telephone:

-----

ŠKODA Partner:

### Second Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

belongs to:

Title, name/company:

-----

Address:

-----

-----

Telephone:

-----

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

-----

Telephone:

-----

Service consultant:

-----

Telephone:

-----



5E3012720AB

**Table of Contents**

|           |  |           |  |
|-----------|--|-----------|--|
| <b>1</b>  | <b>Vehicle owner</b>                                 | 33        | Electrically operated contactless boot lid     |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>About the Owner's Manual</b>                      | 34        | Unlocking the boot lid                         |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>About the Owner's Manual</b>                      | <b>34</b> | <b>Seats, steering wheel and mirror</b>        |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Explanations</b>                                  | 34        | Front seat - with manual operation             |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment</b>  | 35        | Front seat - with electrical operation         |
| 6         | Application Quick Start Guide                        | 35        | Memory function of the seat                    |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Vehicle overviews</b>                             | 36        | Seat massage function                          |
| 7         | Front vehicle area                                   | 36        | Rear seats                                     |
| 9         | Rear vehicle area                                    | 37        | Park position of rear seat belts               |
| 10        | Driver's seat  | 37        | Headrests                                      |
| 10        | Centre console and passenger seat                    | 37        | Front armrest                                  |
| 11        | Engine compartment                                   | 37        | Rear armrest                                   |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Indicator lights</b>                              | 38        | Load-through device                            |
| 11        | Functionality  | 38        | Seat heating and ventilation                   |
| 11        | Indicator light overview                             | 38        | Steering wheel                                 |
| 14        | Indicator light overview                             | 39        | Heated steering wheel                          |
| <b>17</b> | <b>Correct and safe</b>                              | 40        | Interior rear-view mirror                      |
| 17        | Introductory notes for correct use                   | 40        | Exterior mirror                                |
| 17        | New vehicle or new parts                             | <b>41</b> | <b>Restraint systems and airbags</b>           |
| 17        | Regular checks                                       | 41        | Seat belts                                     |
| 17        | No improper vehicle adjustments                      | 42        | Child seat                                     |
| 17        | Keeping sensors and cameras in working order         | 44        | Fasteners for child seats                      |
| 18        | Engine compartment                                   | 46        | Airbags  |
| 18        | Vehicle battery                                      | 47        | Key switch for the front passenger airbag      |
| 18        | Using electrical sockets in the vehicle              | <b>48</b> | <b>Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers</b> |
| 18        | Before your journey                                  | 48        | Exterior lighting                              |
| 20        | Safe driving   | 51        | COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting    |
| 21        | Emergency call                                       | 51        | Light Assist high-beam assist system           |
| 22        | After an accident                                    | 51        | Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system   |
| <b>23</b> | <b>Keys, locks and alarm system</b>                  | 52        | Interior lighting                              |
| 23        | Key  | 53        | Interior ambient light                         |
| 24        | Memory function of the key                           | 54        | Windscreen wipers and washers                  |
| 24        | Central locking                                      | <b>56</b> | <b>Heating and air conditioning system</b>     |
| 26        | Keyless locking (KESSY)                              | 56        | Manual air conditioning                        |
| 26        | Alarm system   | 57        | Climatronic automatic air conditioning system  |
| <b>28</b> | <b>Doors, windows and boot lid</b>                   | 60        | Auxiliary heating and ventilation              |
| 28        | Doors  | <b>62</b> | <b>Driver information system</b>               |
| 28        | Child safety lock on the rear doors                  | 62        | Digital instrument cluster                     |
| 28        | Window - with electrical operation                   | 63        | Driving data                                   |
| 30        | Sliding/tilting roof                                 | 64        | Head-Up display                                |
| 30        | Sunblind - with electrical operation                 | 64        | Vehicle condition                              |
| 31        | Sunblind for the rear window                         | 65        | Button SET                                     |
| 31        | Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes | <b>65</b> | <b>Infotainment Swing</b>                      |
| 31        | Sun visors   | 65        | Infotainment overview                          |
| 31        | Heated windscreen                                    | 65        | System   |
| 32        | Boot lid - with manual operation                     | 66        | Screen   |
| 32        | Boot lid - with electrical control                   | 67        | Infotainment keyboard                          |
|           |  | 68        | Control centre                                 |
|           |  | 68        | Radio  |
|           |  | 71        | Media  |
|           |  | 74        | Mobile device management                       |
|           |  | 76        | Telephone                                      |

|            |  |            |   |
|------------|--|------------|---|
| 78         | Wi-Fi  | 134        | Traffic sign recognition                              |
| 78         | SmartLink  | 135        | Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection     |
| <b>81</b>  | <b>Infotainment Columbus</b>                                   | 135        | Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant              |
| 81         | Infotainment overview  | 135        | Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist     |
| 81         | System   |            |   |
| 82         | Screen   |            |   |
| 83         | Keypad   | <b>136</b> | <b>Park Assist systems</b>                            |
| 84         | Voice control  | 136        | Park Pilot parking aid                                |
| 86         | Control centre   | 137        | Rear view camera                                      |
| 86         | Radio  | 138        | Rear Traffic Alert                                    |
| 90         | Media  | 139        | Exit warning  |
| 94         | Mobile device management                                       | 139        | Park steering assistant                               |
| 95         | Telephone  |            |   |
| 98         | Wi-Fi  | <b>141</b> | <b>Engine, exhaust system and fuel</b>                |
| 100        | Data connection  | 141        | Bonnet  |
| 100        | SmartLink  | 141        | Engine oil  |
| 103        | Navigation   | 143        | Coolant   |
|            |  | 144        | Engine electronics                                    |
| <b>108</b> | <b>Online Services</b>   | 144        | Particle filter                                       |
| 108        | ŠKODA Connect  | 144        | Exhaust control system                                |
| 108        | User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services | 144        | Fuel filter   |
| 109        | Setting personal data protection                               | 144        | Radiator blinds                                       |
| 110        | Information call   | 145        | Fuel filler flap                                      |
| 110        | Breakdown call   | 145        | AdBlue  |
| 110        | User management  | 146        | Petrol  |
| 112        | Personalisation  | 147        | Diesel  |
| 113        | Management of online services                                  | <b>149</b> | <b>Vehicle battery and fuses</b>                      |
| 113        | eSIM data connection   | 149        | Vehicle battery                                       |
| 113        | Online System Update   | 150        | Using the jump-starting cable                         |
| 114        | Shop   | 150        | Fuses   |
| 115        | Service schedules  | 151        | Fuses in the dash panel                               |
| 115        | Vehicle status report  | 152        | Fuses in the engine compartment                       |
| 115        | Remote access to the vehicle                                   |            |   |
| <b>116</b> | <b>Starting and driving</b>                                    | <b>153</b> | <b>Wheels</b>   |
| 116        | Start  | 153        | Tyres and rims  |
| 117        | Starting issues  | 154        | All-season or winter tires                            |
| 117        | START STOP   | 155        | Snow chains   |
| 118        | Manual gearbox   | 155        | Spare and emergency spare wheel                       |
| 118        | Automatic gearbox  | 156        | Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle            |
| 119        | Vehicle driving mode   | 157        | Breakdown kit   |
| 120        | Economical driving style                                       | 158        | Tyre pressure   |
| 120        | Towing a trailer   | 159        | Tyre pressure monitor                                 |
| 121        | Towing eye and towing procedure                                | 159        | Wheel bolt cover caps                                 |
| 122        | Brakes   | 159        | Full wheel frame                                      |
| 123        | Electric parking brake   | <b>160</b> | <b>Storage space and interior equipment</b>           |
| 124        | Auto Hold automatic holding function                           | 160        | Equipment in the boot                                 |
|            |  | 161        | Emergency equipment                                   |
| <b>125</b> | <b>Driver assist systems</b>                                   | 161        | Storage compartment for the reflective vest           |
| 125        | Braking and stabilising systems                                | 161        | Fasteners in the boot                                 |
| 126        | Front Assist   | 162        | Bag hooks in the boot                                 |
| 127        | Pedestrian detection system                                    | 163        | Storage compartment with Cargo components in the boot |
| 127        | Speed limiter  | 163        | Cargo components in the boot                          |
| 128        | Cruise control system  | 163        | Fastening nets  |
| 129        | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)                                  | 163        | Multifunctional pocket                                |
| 131        | Lane Assist  | 164        | Net partition   |
| 132        | Travel Assist  | 165        | Double-sided floor covering                           |
| 133        | Lane change assist system Side Assist                          |            |   |

## 4 Table of Contents

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| 165        | Rigid boot cover   |
| 165        | Roll-up luggage compartment cover                                      |
| 166        | Variable loading floor in the boot                                     |
| 166        | Partition in the boot  |
| 167        | Partition with fastening element in the luggage compartment            |
| 167        | Through-loading bag  |
| 168        | Overview of passenger compartment                                      |
| 169        | Car park ticket holder   |
| 169        | Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door               |
| 169        | Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door                |
| 169        | USB connections  |
| 170        | Hook on the centre body pillar   |
| 170        | Glasses compartment  |
| 170        | Pen holder   |
| 171        | Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side |
| 171        | Storage compartment under the front seat                               |
| 171        | Storage compartment for an umbrella                                    |
| 171        | Storage compartment for hand brush                                     |
| 171        | Phonebox   |
| 172        | Cup holder   |
| 172        | Multimedia holder  |
| 173        | Waste container  |
| 173        | Ceiling  |
| 173        | Display in rear centre console   |
| 173        | Tablet holder  |
| 174        | 12-Volt power socket   |
| 174        | 230-Volt power socket  |
| 175        | Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle                             |
| <b>175</b> | <b>Roof rack and hitch</b>   |
| 175        | Roof rack  |
| 175        | Swivelling hitch   |
| <b>177</b> | <b>Maintaining and cleaning</b>  |
| 177        | Service events   |
| 178        | Service work, adjustments and technical changes                        |
| 178        | Interior   |
| 179        | Exterior   |
| 181        | Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap                                    |
| <b>181</b> | <b>Technical data and specifications</b>                               |
| 181        | Requirements for the technical data                                    |
| 181        | Vehicle identification data  |
| 182        | Maximum permissible weights  |
| 182        | Operating weight   |
| 183        | Vehicle dimensions   |
| 183        | Engine specifications  |
| 184        | Event Data Recorder  |
| 184        | Personal data  |
| 185        | Information about the radio systems in the vehicle                     |
| 185        | Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties            |
| <b>188</b> | <b>Index</b>   |

## About the Owner's Manual

### General

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

### Digital version of the Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

Complete information is included in the digital version of the Owner's Manual. This is available on the ŠKODAweb pages as well as in the mobile application MyŠKODA, which can be downloaded.



► <http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>

### Digital version of the Owner's Manual in Infotainment

*Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.*

The digital version of the Owner's Manual can be displayed in the Infotainment as follows.

- Tap **MENU**. > >
- Choose the manual topic you are looking for.

The digital Owner's Manual can be updated if the protection level of personal data is not set to **Maximum privacy**.

## About the Owner's Manual

### General

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

## Explanations

### Terms used

**“Specialist garage”** - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

**“ŠKODA Service Partner”** - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

**“ŠKODA Partner”** - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

### Text notes

**“Press”** - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

**“Hold”** - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

### Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

#### ⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

📄 Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

## Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

### Application Quick Start Guide

#### Interactive images

In the pictures with the outside of the vehicle and the inside of the vehicle, there are dots. Tapping a dot displays a menu with topics or a detailed image.

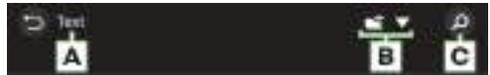
#### Symbols

Information about symbols that can be shown on the instrument cluster display. By tapping the symbol, a detailed description is displayed.

#### Topics

Instruction content, sorted by topic.

#### Displayed topic



Upper topic bar

**A** Title of the topic

**B** Type of information displayed / display menu with information

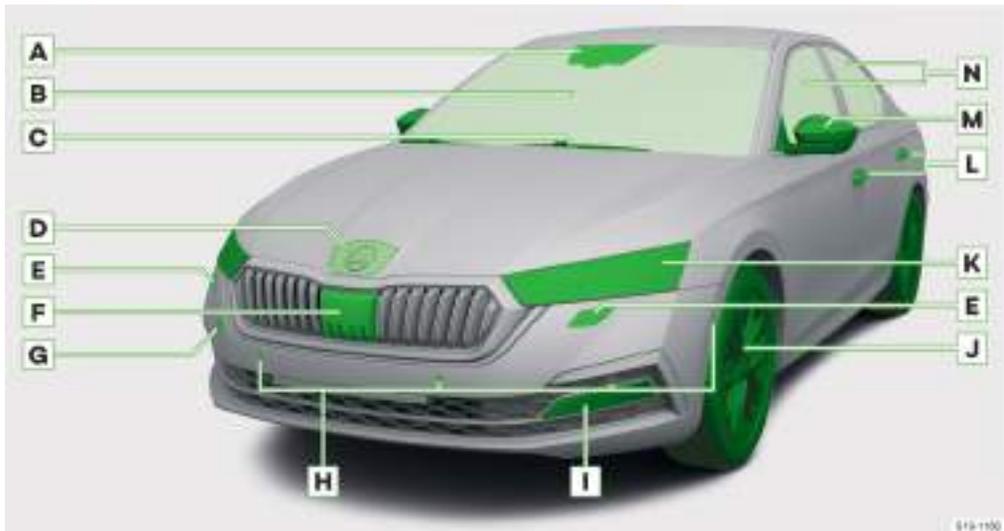
**C** Text search

#### About the instructions

Language selection for instructions and updates.

## Vehicle overviews

### Front vehicle area



- A** Under the windscreen:
  - ▶ Camera for assist systems.
  - ▶ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » [page 48](#).
  - ▶ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » [page 54](#).
- B** Windscreen - heating » [page 31](#).
- C** Windscreen wiper – operation » [page 54](#).
- D** Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » [page 141](#).
- E** Headlight washers » [page 54](#).
- F** Cover in the radiator grille:
  - ▶ Front radar sensor for assist systems.
- G** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » [page 121](#).
- H** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems.
- I** Fog lights - operation » [page 48](#).
- J** Wheels:
  - ▶ Tyres and rims » [page 153](#).
  - ▶ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » [page 156](#).
  - ▶ Breakdown kit » [page 157](#).
  - ▶ Tyre pressure » [page 158](#).
  - ▶ Tyre pressure monitor » [page 159](#).
- K** Headlights:
  - ▶ Operation » [page 48](#).
  - ▶ Light Assist high-beam assist system » [page 51](#).
  - ▶ Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system » [page 51](#).
- L** Door handles:
  - ▶ Opening the door » [page 28](#).
  - ▶ Keyless locking (KESSY) » [page 26](#).

## 8 Vehicle overviews › [Front vehicle area](#)

**M** Exterior mirror:

▶ Operation » [page 40](#).

**N** Side door windows - operation » [page 29](#).

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » [page 17](#).

## Rear vehicle area



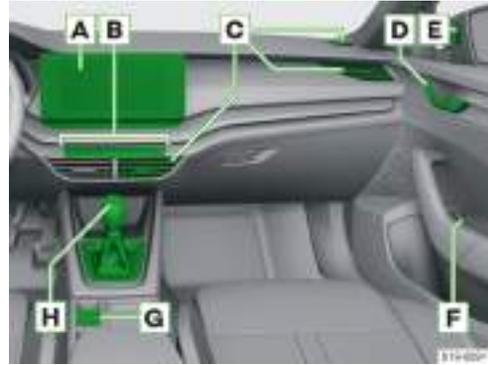
- A** Rear window - heating » [page 31](#).
  - B** Rear window wiper and washer - Operation » [page 54](#).
  - C** Handle of the boot lid:
    - ▶ Manually operated boot lid » [page 32](#).
    - ▶ Electrically operated boot lid » [page 32](#).
    - ▶ Camera for assist systems.
  - D** Radar sensors for assist systems (in the bumper).
  - E** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems.
  - F** Swivelling tow coupling » [page 175](#).
  - G** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » [page 121](#).
  - H** Fuel filler flap » [page 145](#).
    - ▶ Sticker with tyre pressure values » [page 158](#).
    - ▶ Sticker with prescribed fuel.
    - ▶ Ice scraper.
    - ▶ Filler neck of the AdBlue® tank » [page 145](#).
  - I** Roof rails » [page 175](#).
  - J** Tilting/sliding sunroof » [page 30](#).
- › Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » [page 17](#).

## Driver's seat



- A** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 133.
- B** Door opening lever » page 28.
- C** Light switch » page 48.
- D** Air outlet nozzle.
- E** Operating lever (depending on equipment):
  - ▶ Flashing and high beam » page 48.
  - ▶ Speed regulating system » page 128.
  - ▶ Speed limiter » page 127.
  - ▶ High beam assist system » page 51.
  - ▶ Headlight Assist System » page 52.
- F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 62.
- G** Digital instrument cluster » page 62.
- H** Control lever:
  - ▶ Windscreen wipers and washers » page 54.
- I** Starter button » page 116.
- J** Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front air-bag » page 46.
- K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 38.
- L** Operation of the automatic distance control » page 130.
- M** Bonnet release lever » page 141.
- N** Button for the electric boot lid » page 32.
- O** Exterior mirror operation » page 40.
- P** Window operation » page 29.

## Centre console and passenger seat



- A** Infotainment (depending on trim level):
  - ▶ Columbus » page 81.
  - ▶ Swing » page 65.
- B** Buttons (depending on the equipment):
  - ▶ Quick access to the settings of specific vehicle systems (depending on the equipment):
    - ▶ Switch off the START-STOP system » page 117.
    - ▶ Switch off ASR traction control » page 125.
    - ▶ Switch on the ESC Sport stabilisation programme » page 125.
    - ▶ Interior monitoring » page 27.
    - ▶ Tyre pressure monitor » page 159.
    - ▶ Access to other vehicle settings.
    - ▶ Access to the selection and settings of the driver assistance systems.
  - ▶ Driving mode select » page 119.
  - ▶ Menu with Park Assist systems » page 136.
  - ▶ Hazard warning system button » page 48.
  - ▶ Central locking » page 24.
  - ▶ Display of the air conditioner operating screen in the Infotainment screen » page 56, » page 58.
  - ▶ Quick ventilation/defrosting of the windscreen.
  - ▶ Heated rear window » page 31.
- C** Air outlet nozzle.
- D** Door opening lever » page 28.
- E** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 133.
- F** Window operation in the passenger door » page 29.
- G** Buttons:
  - ▶ Auto Hold » page 124.

▶ © Parking brake » page 123.

**H** Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) » page 118.
- ▶ Selector lever (automatic gearbox) » page 118.

## Engine compartment



- A** Coolant expansion tank » page 143
- B** Engine oil dipstick » page 141
- C** Engine oil filler opening » page 141
- D** Brake fluid reservoir » page 122
- E** Vehicle battery » page 149
- F** Fuse box » page 152
- G** Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 54

## Indicator lights

### Functionality

#### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the illuminated indicator lights and associated messages on the instrument cluster display may result in accidents, serious injury or damage to the vehicle.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster indicate the current status of certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

#### Additional indicator lights

Depending on the meaning, the additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights.

⚠ - Danger

⚠ - Warning

### Indicator light overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights for the functional test of the vehicle systems light up briefly. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » page 11, *Functionality*.

| Symbol | Meaning  |
|--------|--|
|        | Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 11. |
|        | Front seat belt not fastened » page 41.                            |
|        | Vehicle battery is not charging » page 149.                        |
|        | Along with  - Engine fault » page 143, » page 149.                 |
|        | Engine oil pressure too low » page 142.                            |
|        | Engine oil level too low » page 142.                               |
|        | Coolant level is too low » page 143.                               |
|        | Coolant temperature too high » page 143.                           |

| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|    | Brake fluid level is too low » page 123.  |
|    | Electromechanical brake booster faulty » page 126.  |
|    | Together with  - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 126. |
|    | Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 123.  |
|    | Parking brake on » page 123.  |
|    | <b>Illuminates</b> - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.  |
|    | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock faulty » page 39.   |
|    | Automatic gearbox impaired » page 119.  |
|    | Automatic gearbox overheated » page 119.  |
|    | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.   |
|    | AdBlue® system impaired » page 146.   |
|    | Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 126.   |
|    | ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 129.  |
|   | Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 11.   |
|  | The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 147, » page 148.   |
|  | Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 55.  |
|  | Bulb faulty » page 51.  |
|  | Rear fog light switched on » page 49.   |
|  | Engine oil level too high <b>or</b> engine oil level sensor impaired » page 142.  |
|  | Clogged particle filter » page 144.   |
|  | Parking brake error » page 123.   |
|  | ABS faulty » page 126.  |
|  | Worn brake pads » page 123.   |

| Symbol   | Meaning   |
|--|---|
|               | Automatic gearbox overheated » page 119.  |
|               | Automatic gearbox impaired » page 119.  |
|               | Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 144.   |
|               | AdBlue® system impaired » page 146.   |
|               | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.   |
|               | Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 159.   |
|               | Tyre pressure change » page 154, » page 159.  |
|               | <b>Illuminates</b> - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.  |
|               | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock not unlocked » page 39.   |
|               | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock faulty » page 39.   |
|               | KESY - starting problem » page 117.   |
|               | KESY - no key found » page 26.  |
|               | Adaptive suspension faulty » page 120.  |
| <b>EPC</b>   | Petrol engine control faulty » page 144.  |
|             | Emission control system faulty » page 144.  |
|             | <b>illuminates</b> , if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 144.   |
|             | <b>Flashing</b> - Diesel engine control faulty » page 144.  |
| <b>ON</b>   | <b>Flashes together with OFF</b>  - Key switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 47. |
| <b>OFF</b>  | Front passenger airbag switched off » page 47.  |
| <b>ON</b>   | Front passenger airbag switched on » page 47.   |

| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|    | Airbag system faulty » page 47.   |
|    | Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 135.  |
|    | <b>Illuminates</b> for 4 seconds and then <b>flashes</b> - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 46. |
|    | Ball rod not locked » page 176.   |
|    | ASR deactivated » page 125.   |
|    | <b>Illuminates</b> - ESC or ASR faulty » page 126.  |
|    | <b>Flashing</b> - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 125.   |
|    | Front Assist deactivated » page 126.  |
|    | Front Assist not available » page 126.  |
|    | ACC not available » page 131.   |
|    | Lane Assist intervenes » page 131.  |
|   | Auxiliary heater and ventilation switched on » page 60.   |
|  | Turn signal light, left » page 49, » page 50.   |
|  | Turn signal light, right » page 49, » page 50.  |
|  | Trailer turn signal light » page 51.  |
|  | Front fog lights switched on » page 49.   |
|  | Automatic gearbox is in P mode » page 118.  |
| <b>AUTO HOLD</b>  | Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 124.   |
|  | Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 131.   |
|  | ACC controls the driving speed » page 129.  |
|  | The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 128.  |
|  | Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 127.  |
|  | Travel Assist activated » page 132.   |

| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|    | High beam or flasher activated » page 49.                                     |
|    | Rear seat belt not fastened » page 41.  |
|    | A rear seat belt is fastened » page 41.                                       |
|    | High beam Assist System switched on » page 51, » page 52.                     |
|    | No light is switched on » page 48.  |
|    | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.   |
|    | AdBlue® system impaired. » page 146.  |
|    | Service event » page 177.   |
|    | Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 117.               |
|    | Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 117.          |
|    | <b>LIM</b> Speed limiter faulty » page 128.                                   |
|    | <b>LIM</b> Speed limiter activated » page 127.                                |
|    | Travel Assist disabled » page 132.  |
|    | ACC activated » page 129.   |
|  | ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 129.              |
|  | ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 129. |
|  | Cruise control system faulty » page 129.                                      |
|  | Cruise control activated » page 128.  |
|  | Front Assist is started » page 126.   |
|  | Safety distance too small » page 126.   |
|  | Consumption-friendly driving » page 120.                                      |
|  | Break recommendation » page 135.  |
|  | Driving mode Normal » page 120.   |

| Symbol  | Meaning                             |
|---|-------------------------------------|
|  | Driving mode Eco » page 120.        |
|  | Comfort Driving Mode » page 120.    |
|  | Individual Driving Mode » page 120. |
|  | Sport Driving Mode » page 120.      |

### Indicator light overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|    | Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 11.  |
|    | Front seat belt not fastened » page 41.   |
|    | Vehicle battery is not charging » page 149.   |
|    | Along with  - Engine fault » page 143, » page 149.         |
|   | Engine oil pressure too low » page 142.   |
|  | Engine oil level too low » page 142.  |
|  | Coolant level is too low » page 143.  |
|  | Coolant temperature too high » page 143.  |
|  | Brake fluid level is too low » page 123.  |
|  | Electromechanical brake booster faulty » page 126.  |
|  | Together with  - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 126. |
|  | Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 123.  |
|  | Parking brake on » page 123.  |
|  | <b>Illuminates</b> - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.  |
|  | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock faulty » page 39.   |

| Symbol  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|    | Automatic gearbox impaired » page 119.                                    |
|    | Automatic gearbox overheated » page 119.                                  |
|    | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.   |
|    | AdBlue® system impaired » page 146.                                       |
|    | Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 126.                     |
|    | ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 129.                          |
|    | Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 11.           |
|    | The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 147, » page 148.     |
|    | Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 55.                          |
|    | Bulb faulty » page 51.  |
|    | Rear fog light switched on » page 49.                                     |
|    | Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor impaired » page 142. |
|    | Clogged particle filter » page 144.                                       |
|    | Parking brake error » page 123.   |
|  | ABS faulty » page 126.  |
|  | Worn brake pads » page 123.   |
|  | Automatic gearbox overheated » page 119.                                  |
|  | Automatic gearbox impaired » page 119.                                    |
|  | Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 144.                               |
|  | AdBlue® system impaired » page 146.                                       |
|  | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.   |
|  | Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 159.                           |
|  | Tyre pressure change » page 154, » page 159.                              |

| Symbol   | Meaning  |
|--|--|
|  | <b>Illuminates</b> - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.   |
|             | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock not unlocked » page 39.  |
|  | <b>Flashing</b> - Steering lock faulty » page 39.  |
|             | KESY - starting problem » page 117.  |
|  | KESY - no key found » page 26.   |
|             | Adaptive suspension fault » page 120.  |
| <b>EPC</b>   | Petrol engine control fault » page 144.  |
|             | Emission control system fault » page 144.  |
|             | <b>Illuminates</b> , if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system fault » page 144. |
|  | <b>Flashing</b> - Diesel engine control fault » page 144.  |
| <b>ON</b>   | <b>Flashes</b> together with OFF%, - Key switch for airbag deactivation fault » page 47.   |
| <b>OFF</b>  | Front passenger airbag switched off » page 47.   |
| <b>ON</b>  | Front passenger airbag switched on » page 47.  |
|  | Airbag system faulty » page 47.  |
|  | Crew Protect Assist fault » page 135.  |
|           | <b>Illuminates</b> for 4 seconds and then <b>flashes</b> - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 46.  |
|           | Ball rod not locked » page 176.  |
|           | ASR deactivated » page 125.  |
|  | <b>Illuminates</b> - ESC or ASR fault » page 126.  |
|           | <b>Flashing</b> - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 125.  |
|           | Front Assist deactivated » page 126.   |
|           | Front Assist not available » page 126.   |

| Symbol  | Meaning  |
|---|--|
|    | ACC not available » page 131.                                    |
|    | Lane Assist intervenes » page 131.                               |
|    | Auxiliary heater and ventilation switched on » page 60.          |
|    | Turn signal light, left » page 49, » page 50.                    |
|    | Turn signal light, right » page 49, » page 50.                   |
|    | Trailer turn signal light » page 51.                             |
|    | Front fog lights switched on » page 49.                          |
|    | Automatic gearbox is in P mode » page 118.                       |
| <b>AUTO HOLD</b>  | Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 124.                      |
|    | Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 131.      |
|    | ACC controls the driving speed » page 129.                       |
|   | The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 128. |
|    | Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 127.             |
|   | Travel Assist activated » page 132.                              |
|  | High beam or flasher activated » page 49.                        |
|  | Rear seat belt not fastened » page 41.                           |
|  | A rear seat belt is fastened » page 41.                          |
|  | High beam Assist System switched on » page 51, » page 52.        |
|  | No light is switched on » page 48.                               |
|  | AdBlue® level too low » page 146.                                |
|  | AdBlue® system impaired. » page 146.                             |
|  | Service event » page 177.  |
|  | Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 117.  |

## 16 Indicator lights › Indicator light overview

| Symbol  | Meaning  |
|---|--|
|    | Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » <a href="#">page 117</a> .          |
|    | Speed limiter faulty » <a href="#">page 128</a> .  |
|    | Speed limiter activated » <a href="#">page 127</a> .   |
|    | Travel Assist disabled » <a href="#">page 132</a> .  |
|    | ACC activated » <a href="#">page 129</a> .   |
|    | ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » <a href="#">page 129</a> .              |
|    | ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » <a href="#">page 129</a> . |
|    | Cruise control system faulty » <a href="#">page 129</a> .                                      |
|    | Cruise control activated » <a href="#">page 128</a> .  |
|    | Front Assist is started » <a href="#">page 126</a> .   |
|    | Safety distance too small » <a href="#">page 126</a> .   |
|    | Consumption-friendly driving » <a href="#">page 120</a> .                                      |
|   | Break recommendation » <a href="#">page 135</a> .  |
|  | Driving mode Normal » <a href="#">page 120</a> .   |
|  | Driving mode Eco » <a href="#">page 120</a> .  |
|  | Comfort Driving Mode » <a href="#">page 120</a> .  |
|  | Individual Driving Mode » <a href="#">page 120</a> .   |
|  | Sport Driving Mode » <a href="#">page 120</a> .  |

## Correct and safe

### Introductory notes for correct use

- ▶ Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- ▶ When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- ▶ Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- ▶ Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- ▶ Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ All work on the vehicle's safety systems e.g. on the seatbelts or the airbag system, may only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- ▶ When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- ▶ Please note the service intervals.

### New vehicle or new parts

#### New vehicle - Running in the engine

Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- ▶ During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- ▶ Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

#### New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

#### New tyres

New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

### Regular checks

#### What should be taken into account before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points.

- ▶ Is the tyre undamaged?
- ▶ Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- ▶ Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- ▶ Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- ▶ Is the windscreen in good condition?
- ▶ Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- ▶ Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- ▶ Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- ▶ Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- ▶ Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- ▶ Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- ▶ Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- ▶ Is the spoiler working properly?
- ▶ Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- ▶ Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

### No improper vehicle adjustments

Improper modifications can cause interference and affect safety-related functions and other functions of the vehicle.

- ▶ Adjustments and technical modifications to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- ▶ Do not cover the engine with additional insulation materials, e.g. a blanket.

### Keeping sensors and cameras in working order

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

The rear-mounted accessories, e.g. bike rack, may affect system and camera functionality.

- ▶ Do not cover or put a sticker over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.

- ▶ If there is damage suspected to the sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Engine compartment

### Before opening the engine compartment flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- ▶ Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- ▶ Open the driver door.

### When working in the engine compartment

- ▶ Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- ▶ Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
- ▶ Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- ▶ If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
- ▶ Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

### Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle needs various fuels to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These include fuel, oils, battery acid, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

- ▶ Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- ▶ Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
- ▶ In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
- ▶ The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
- ▶ Store soiled cloths in a well-ventilated area until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

## Vehicle battery

### Handling the vehicle battery

Battery acid is highly corrosive. Improper handling of the vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- ▶ When handling the vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- ▶ Do not tilt the vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.

- ▶ If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Get medical help without delay.
- ▶ Do not charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not use a damaged vehicle battery.
- ▶ Short circuit! Do not connect the battery terminals.

## Using electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- ▶ The sockets may get hot during operation. Do not touch hot sockets.
- ▶ Protect sockets from liquids.
- ▶ If moisture gets into the socket, let the socket dry before reusing it.
- ▶ Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

## Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

### Before you go

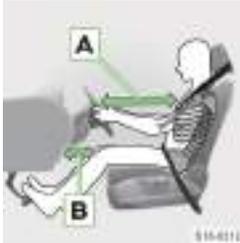
- ▶ Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- ▶ Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- ▶ Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- ▶ Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- ▶ Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- ▶ Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- ▶ Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

### Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ▶ Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- ▶ Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.

- ▶ Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- ▶ On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- ▶ Keep your feet in the footwell.
- ▶ Use the entire seat.
- ▶ Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- ▶ Do not hold your limbs out the window.



- ▶ Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
- ▶ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25

cm.

- ▶ For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance **B** from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- ▶ Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
- ▶ Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

### Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- ▶ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body

(it must not run over loose layers of clothing).

- ▶ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- ▶ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- ▶ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- ▶ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.

- ▶ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- ▶ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

### Correct steering wheel position



- ▶ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

### Be mindful of the effect of the airbag system

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » [page 46](#).

- ▶ Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » [page 47](#).

### Securing children properly

- ▶ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
- ▶ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » [page 43](#).

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

**A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag**



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

**A child that has been properly secured in a child seat**



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

**Transporting objects safely**

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- ▶ Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

- ▶ Transport objects securely.
- ▶ Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- ▶ Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- ▶ Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
- ▶ Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- ▶ Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and fasten it so it cannot slip.
- ▶ Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

**Safe driving**

**Introductory notes**

- ▶ Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- ▶ Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

**Paying attention to warning signals**

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▶ If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

**Using assistance systems in a clever way**

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- ▶ Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- ▶ Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

**Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel**

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

- ▶ Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▶ Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
- ▶ Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.
- ▶ Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

**Driving with a loaded roof rack**

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

**Towing a trailer**

The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

- ▶ Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
- ▶ Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

### Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system!

- ▶ Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
- ▶ Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- ▶ Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

### Vehicle operation in different weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, battery replacement, etc.).

### Is something wrong?

- ▶ Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- ▶ If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- ▶ Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

### Parking the vehicle safely

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

- ▶ For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

- ▶ Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
- ▶ Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.

- ▶ For vehicles with automatic transmission, choose mode **P**.
- ▶ Turn off the engine.
- ▶ For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal.

### Exiting the vehicle

#### Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

- ▶ Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- ▶ In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
- ▶ At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
- ▶ When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 24.

## Emergency call

### ⚠ WARNING

Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

### ⚠ WARNING

This emergency service is only available in some countries.

### ⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

### Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:  
<https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data>.

**Serious accident - automatic call**

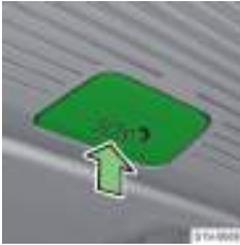
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist assistant system has intervened.

**Minor accident - call option**

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

**Manual call**



The emergency button is located below the cap with the icon .

- › To **open** the cap, press on it.
- › To **close** the cap, press on it until it clicks into place.

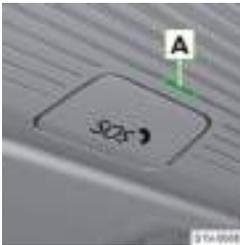


- › Press and hold the  button under the flap.
- › Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
- › To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the emergency call

button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

**Indicator light**



The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on by the indicator light  illuminating.

- ▶ Green - lit up - the system is functional.
- ▶ Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre.
- ▶ Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circum-

stance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage.

**⚠ WARNING**

If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

**After an accident**

**What to do after an accident**

Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the accident to the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

**Safety systems**

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- ▶ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- ▶ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

**What to do in the event of a fire**

Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the fire to the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

## Keys, locks and alarm system

### Key

#### Key Overview



- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- A** Battery status warning light
- B** Locking tab for removal of the key bit

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- ▶ Keep the grooves in the key clean.
- f** The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

#### Removing the key bit



- › Press the securing tab **A**. The pendant part **B** of the key bit folds out.
- › Press the securing tab **A** again.
- › Remove the key bit.



- ▶ A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.
- › Replace the battery » page 23.

#### The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons.

- ▶ The battery in the key is empty.
- › Replace the battery » page 23.
- ▶ The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows.

- › Press one of the buttons on the key.
- › Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 25.

**f** If necessary, the key must be synchronized if one of the buttons on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

#### Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.



- › Remove the key bit and partially insert it into the opening.
- › Press down on the key fob to release the top cover.



- › Open the battery cover.

#### Troubleshooting

##### The battery in the key is almost empty

- ▶ After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:



into place.

- › Insert a thin screwdriver into the recess **A** and remove the battery.
- › Press any button on the remote key to re-set the key.
- › Insert the new battery.
- › Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks

**Unlock indicator:** double flashing of the indicator lights.

**Lock indicator:** single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

**I** If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

**SAFE function**

Depending on the equipment, the SAFE function can be integrated into the central locking system.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function switches on when the vehicle is locked.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

**⚠ DANGER**

Risk of death!

- ▶ When the vehicle is locked and the SAFE function is switched on, nobody is allowed to remain in the vehicle.

**Turn off the SAFE function**

- ▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

- ▶ Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring » [page 27, Settings](#).

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

**Memory function of the key**

**Functionality**

*Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.*

Each time the vehicle is locked, the position of the driver's seat and rearview mirror are stored in the memory of the remote key being used to lock the vehicle.

**Operation**

**Retrieve stored position**

- › Unlock the vehicle and open the driver's door.

The driver's seat and the exterior mirrors occupy the position assigned in the memory to the key used to unlock the vehicle.

**Stop position change**

- › Press any button on the seat to be adjusted.

Or:

- › Press the  button on the key.

**Settings**

**Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards**

Storing takes place automatically every time the vehicle is locked.

**I** The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

**Central locking**

**Functionality**

**Central locking system**

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

**Operation**

**Ways in which central locking operates**

Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Key » [page 23](#).
- ▶ Keyless locking (KESSY)» [page 26](#).
- ▶ Central locking button.

**Lock/unlock using the central locking button**

- › The  button in the middle part of the control panel.

The  symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks all of the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle is also unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

### Setting the unlocking and locking function

The lock and unlock functions are set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

**CAR** >  > Outside > Open and Close

Or:

**MENU** >  >  > Outside

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking system*.
- › Select the *Central locking* menu item.

#### All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

#### Single door

Using the  button on the key, the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

#### Doors on one side of the vehicle

Using the  button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

#### Automatic locking after starting

After starting, all doors and the boot lid are locked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached.

The vehicle is unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

An automatically locked vehicle makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

### Troubleshooting

#### Central locking fault

- ▶ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
- ▶ Then it lights up continuously.
- ▶ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

#### Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Remove the cover

- › Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
- › Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
- › Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- › Release the door handle.



Locking and unlocking

- › Insert the removed key bit with the pendant facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder, then unlock or lock it.

Install cover

- › Pull on the door handle and hold it.
- › Replace the cover.

- › Release the door handle.

#### Locking the door without the lock cylinder



- › Open the door.
- › For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
- › Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- › Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

## Keyless locking (KESSEY)

### Usage

The keyless locking system, KESSEY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

### Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

### Unlocking



- › Grab the door handle.
- › Open the door.

### Locking



- › Touch the sensor.
- After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

### Unlocking the boot lid

- › Press the handle of the boot lid.

### Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

### Settings

#### Deactivate keyless locking

- › Lock the vehicle with the button  on the key.

- › Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

- › To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

### Automatic unlocking

Depending on the trim level, the keyless locking system might also include an automatic unlocking function.

When the key is brought close, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

**CAR** >  > Exterior > Opening and closing > Automatic unlocking

Or:

**MENU** >  >  > Exterior

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking*.
- › Choose the menu item *Central locking* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

 If the vehicle is not unlocked within 72 hours, the function is automatically deactivated.

### Troubleshooting

#### The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

- › Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
- › Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
- › If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

 illuminates

A message that no key was found in the vehicle.

- › Insert the key into the vehicle.

## Alarm system

### Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

### Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs.

- ▶ Opening the bonnet.
- ▶ Opening the boot lid.
- ▶ Opening the door.
- ▶ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- ▶ Towing the vehicle.
- ▶ Movement in the vehicle.
- ▶ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- ▶ Uncoupling the trailer.
- ▶ Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder.

### Switching off the triggered alarm

- › Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

- › Turn on the ignition.

### Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

- ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

### Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time.

- ▶ Interior monitoring.
- ▶ Towing protection.

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function » [page 24, Functionality](#).

### Deactivation

- ▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

- ▶ In Infotainment, in the menu: **CAR** >  > Outside > Open and Close.

- › Remove the hook to disable the interior monitoring.

Or:

- ▶ In Infotainment, in the menu: **MENU** >  >  > Outside.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking system*.
- › Select the *central locking system* menu item and deactivate the interior monitoring by moving the slider to the left.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

- ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

- ⓘ After switching off the engine, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

## Doors, windows and boot lid

### Doors

#### Opening/closing the door

##### Opening from the outside



- › Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

##### Opening from the inside



- › Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

##### Closing from the inside

- › Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

### Child safety lock on the rear doors

#### Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

##### Switching on and off



- › Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

**A** Child lock switched off

**B** Child lock switched on

#### Electrically operated child lock



- › Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.
- › Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated  displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

### Window - with electrical operation

#### What you should be mindful of

##### Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

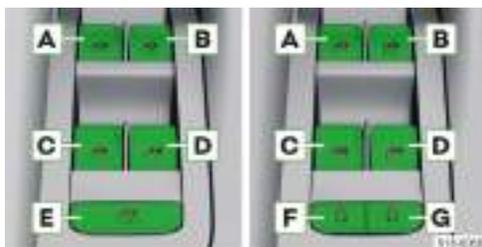
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

##### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

## Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on the equipment:

- A** Front left window
- B** Front right window
- C** Rear left window
- D** Rear right window
- E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors
- F** Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation)
- G** Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation)

## Operation

### Opening

- › Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

- › Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

### Closing

- › To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

- › Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

**I** After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

### Open all of the windows at the same time

- › Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

- › Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

**I** Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be opened in this way.

### Close all of the windows at the same time

- › Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

- › Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

- › For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

**I** Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be closed in this way.

## Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** › › Outside › Menu item for window operation

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**MENU** › › › Outside

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the window operation menu item.

- › Select the window operation menu item and accept the settings.

## Troubleshooting

### The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

- › Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

### The automatic window operation does not work after disconnecting the vehicle battery

- › Enable automatic window operation » page 29.

## Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

### Activate automatic window operation

- › Turn on the ignition.
- › Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.

- › Release the button.
- › Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

## Sliding/tilting roof

### What you should be mindful of

#### Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the glass panel closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limiter will be disabled during the third closing attempt. The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

#### 📌 NOTICE

- ▶ During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.
- ▶ Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

### Operation

#### Opening



- › Move backwards using your finger.

#### Closing



- › Move forwards using your finger.

#### Stop/restore the movement of the sliding/tilting roof

- › To **stop** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, press ↵.
- › To **restore** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, move your finger in the desired direction.

#### Open/slide back the sliding/tilting roof

- › To **open** or **slide back** the sliding/tilting roof, press ↵.

📌 After switching off the ignition, the sliding/tilting roof can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

#### Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof

The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

- › Press and hold the button to **turn it off**.
- › Press and hold the button to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

- › Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

## Sunblind - with electrical operation

### Operation

#### Opening



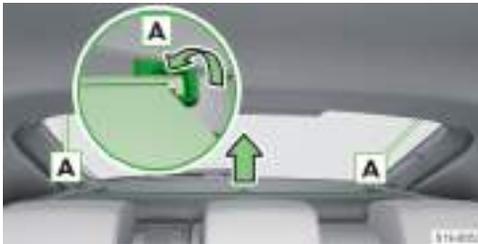
- › Move backwards using your finger.

**Closing**

- › Move forwards using your finger.

**Stop/restore the movement of the roller blind**

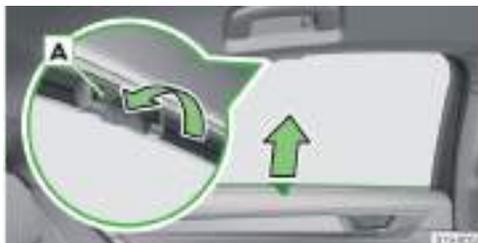
- › To **stop** the movement of the roller blind, press .
- › To **restore** the movement of the roller blind, move your finger in the desired direction.

**Sunblind for the rear window****Operation****Brightness protection**

- › Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holders **A**.

**Rolling up**

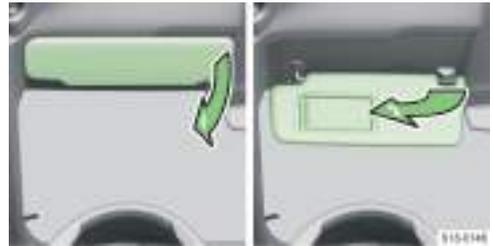
- › Remove the sun protection blind from the holders at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

**Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes****Operation****Brightness protection**

- › Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder **A**.

**Rolling up**

- › Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

**Sun visors****Folding up and folding down**

- 1 Swivel the front visor towards the windshield
- 2 Swivel the visor towards the door

**Heated windscreen****Usage**

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

**Conditions**

- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is below about 35°C.

**Operation****Heated rear window**

- › Press the  button under the Infotainment.

**Heated windscreen**

- › Press the  button under the Infotainment.
- › Tap the functional surface  /  › Front ›  on the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Press  under Infotainment.
- › Tap the functional surface  ›  on the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after about 10 minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

**Mode for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen**

Press the  button under the Infotainment.

## Settings

### Automatic heated windscreen

The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

- › Press the  button below the Infotainment >  and tap the Infotainment screen to turn on the heated windscreen.
- › Select the menu item for automatic windscreen heating.

## Troubleshooting

### The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes

The heating does not work as the battery charging level is low.

## Boot lid - with manual operation

### Operation

#### Opening



- › Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

#### Closing



- › Grasp the fixture **A** and pull the lid down.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the lid while driving!

- ▶ Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid.

## Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the  button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

## Boot lid - with electrical control

### Operation

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

- ▶ Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

#### ① NOTICE

- ▶ Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
- ▶ Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

**i** If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

**i** When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

### Handle in the tailgate



- › Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door

is opened.

**Button in the tailgate**

- › Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

**Button in the door**

- › To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.
- › To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.
- › To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or

release the button.

**Button on the key**

- › Press the  button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

**f** The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

**Settings****Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it**

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

- › Stop the tailgate in the desired position.
- › Press the  button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

**Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate**

- › Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.
- › Press the  button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

**Troubleshooting****The tailgate does not react to the opening signal**

- › There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

- › Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

- › Mechanically unlock the tailgate » page 34.

**The tailgate does not react to the closing signal**

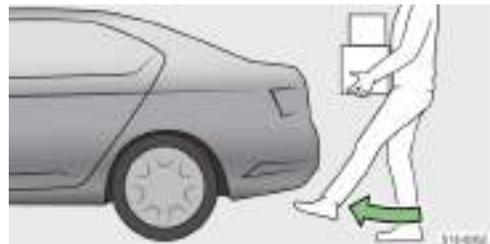
- › Close the tailgate manually.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- ▶ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

**Electrically operated contactless boot lid****Operating conditions**

- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
- ✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

**Operation****Opening/closing the lid**

- › Stand in the middle behind the bumper.
- › Move one foot quickly under the bumper and remove it again.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

**Closing display**

When you close the lid, audible signals are sounded.

**Stopping/ restoring lid movement**

The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

### Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- ▶ Downpour.
- ▶ Dirty rear bumper.

### Settings

#### Activating and deactivating

› In Infotainment, select the following menu item.

**CAR** > > Exterior > "Easy Open"

Or:

**MENU** > > > Exterior

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item "Easy Open".
- › Choose the menu item "Easy Open".

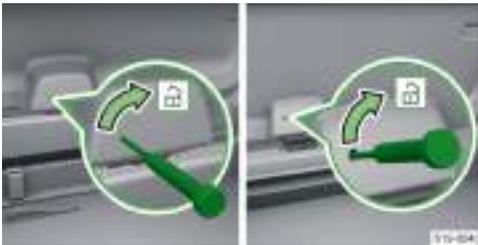
We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

- ▶ Installation of a roof rack.
- ▶ Coupling a trailer or another accessory to the hitch.
- ▶ Car wash.
- ▶ Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle.

## Unlocking the boot lid

### Unlocking

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.



- › Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
- › Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

## Seats, steering wheel and mirror

### Front seat - with manual operation

#### Controls on the seat



- A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place
- B** Adjusting the height
- C** Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment
- D** Adjusting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

### Folding passenger seat backrest

#### Folding down



- › Pull on the operating lever.
- › Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

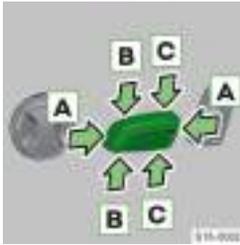
#### Folding back up

- › Pull on the operating lever.
- › Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

## Front seat - with electrical operation

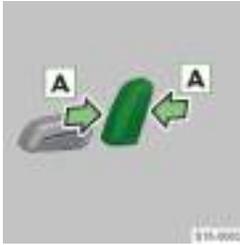
### Controls on the seat

#### Adjusting the seat



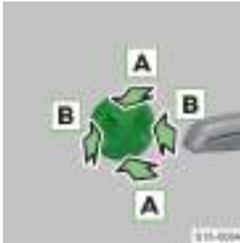
- A** Adjust in a longitudinal direction
- B** Adjust the inclination
- C** Adjusting the height

#### Adjusting the seat back



- A** Adjust the inclination

#### Adjusting the lumbar support



- A** Set the position of the curvature
- B** Set the extent of the curvature

#### Set the length of the seat manually



- › Press the release handle.
- › Push the front part of the seat forwards or backwards.

## Memory function of the seat

### Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

### Operation

#### Retrieve stored position

- › With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.
- › In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

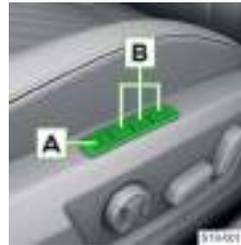
The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

#### Stop position change

- › With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.
- Or:
- › Press the button on the key.
  - › In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

### Settings

#### Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



- › Turn on the ignition.
- › Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
- › Press the button **A** and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons **B**.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

**i** The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

#### Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

#### Storing front passenger's exterior mirror position for reversing

*Applies to Infotainment Swing.*

- › Turn on the ignition.
- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** › › Outside › Mirror and wipers

- › Activate the folding function of the mirror.

- › Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

**[i]** When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

**Storing front passenger's exterior mirror position for reversing**

*Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.*

- › Turn on the ignition.
- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**MENU** ›  ›  › *Outside*

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *mirror*.
- › Choose the *mirror* menu item and select and activate the mirror's attachment function.
- › Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

**[i]** When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

**Seat massage function**

**Turn on/turn off**



- › Press the  button. Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- ▶ Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

**Rear seats**

**Folding down the seat backs**

**Before folding down**

- › Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
- › Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.
- › Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

**Folding forwards from the passenger compartment**



- › Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

**Folding forwards from the boot**



- › Pull on the lever. The seat back is unlocked and partly folded forwards.

**Folding back up**



- › Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
- › Fold the seat backrest back up.

The release handle must audibly click into place.

- › Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin **A** must not be visible.

## Park position of rear seat belts



## Headrests

### Adjusting the height of the headrests

#### Front headrests



- › Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

#### Rear headrests



- › Move the headrest in the desired direction. When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

#### Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest



- The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement, e.g. when sleeping.
- › Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.
  - › Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

## Removing and inserting the rear headrests

### Removing



- › Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
- › Move the headrest up to the stop.
- › Press safety buttons **A** and **B** at the same time and remove the support.

### Inserting

- › Insert the headrest into the seat backrest. The safety button must click into place.

## Front armrest

### Settings



- Adjusting the height
- › Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

#### Folding down

- › Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

Adjust in a longitudinal

direction

- › Move the backrest to the desired position.

## Rear armrest

### Settings



- › Fold down the armrest. The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

## Load-through device

### Open and close

#### Open from the passenger compartment



- › Fold down the armrest.
- › Press the lid in the upper area and pull on the handle.
- › Open the lid.

#### Open from the luggage compartment



- › Press the store button.
- › Open the lid.

#### Closing

- › Fold back the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks into place.

After closing, the red mark on the back of the cover above the safety button must not be visible.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis in a secured through-loading bag.

## Seat heating and ventilation

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

- ▶ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

- ▶ Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise puncture them.
- ▶ Do not turn on the heater in the following situations.
  - ▶ The seat is not occupied.
  - ▶ There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  - ▶ There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

### Conditions

- ✓ The engine is running.

### Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. The outer rear seats can only be heated.

#### Models without seat ventilation

- › Touch the function area or in the Infotainment screen.
- › Adjust the heating output by repeatedly tapping the functional surface.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the Infotainment screen function surface.

#### Models with seat ventilation

- › Touch the function area or in the Infotainment screen.

A menu is displayed for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

- › Adjust the heating output/ventilation level.

#### Display heating output/ventilation level in the button

- - - Seat heating switched on
- - - Seat ventilation switched on

If the engine is switched off with the heating/ventilation switched on and then started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating/ventilation will continue according to the setting before the engine was switched off.

### Settings

#### Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater

- › Press the button below the Infotainment > > Rear > / on the infotainment screen to lock the increase in heat output.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be turned down.

## Steering wheel

### Adjust the steering wheel

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

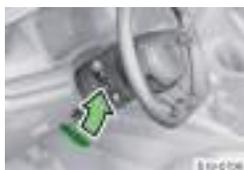
- ▶ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



- › Swing the safety lever downwards.



- › Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



- › Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

## Troubleshooting

### Power assisted steering faulty

- illuminates - total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance
  - › Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
  - › If the indicator light does not go out, stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

- › Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
- › If the indicator light does not go out, continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Steering column lock faulty

flashes  
 Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes  
 Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Steering column lock not unlocked

flashes  
 Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

- › Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
- › If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Heated steering wheel

### Conditions

- ✓ The engine is running.

### Operation

- › Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

- › Press under the Infotainment and tap > > in the Infotainment screen.

The seat heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off or switched on at the level of the heating output that was set before the heating was switched off.

### Settings

#### Steering wheel heating together with driver's seat heating

*Applies to Climatronic.*

When the function is switched on, pressing the button for the driver's seat heating also turns steering wheel heating on or off.

Turn on the function as follows.

- › Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic in the Infotainment screen and select the menu item for coupling the seat and steering wheel heating.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** > > in the Infotainment screen and select the menu item for the coupling of the seat and steering wheel heating.

When the function is switched on, the function surface is displayed in the Infotainment screen. This can be used to switch steering wheel heating on or off.

## Interior rear-view mirror

### Operation

#### Interior mirror with manual darkening



- A** Mirror is not darkened
- B** Mirror darkens

#### Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

- ▶ Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

## Exterior mirror

### Operation

The mirrors can be folded manually or electrically, depending on the equipment.

#### Positions of the rotary knob



- L** Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
- 0** Switch off operation
- R** Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
- Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position)
- Heat the mirror

when the engine is running

#### Adjusting the mirror surface

- › Select position **L** or **R**.
- › Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

#### Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

The mirrors fold in when the vehicle is locked and fold back out when the vehicle is unlocked, if this feature is activated.

**i** Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

#### Manually foldable mirrors

- › Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

#### Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

When adjusting the mirror surface of the driver's mirror, the mirror surface of the front passenger's mirror is adjusted at the same time if this function is activated.

#### Mirror with memory function

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35.

#### Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35 stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

#### Conditions

- ✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
- ✓ The mirror position is saved.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The adjustment knob is in the **R** position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.

- ▶ Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of mirror damage!

- ▶ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences (e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring), fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

### Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out in the Infotainment as follows.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Outside > mirror

- › Perform activation or deactivation.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**MENU** > > > Outside

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *mirror*.
- › Select the *mirror* menu item and activate or deactivate.

## Troubleshooting

### Electric mirror operation impaired

- › Adjust the mirror surface by pressing it lightly with your finger.

### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!

- ▶ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

## Restraint systems and airbags

### Seat belts

#### Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- ▶ Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself. Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

#### Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

#### Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

**i** Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

#### Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » [page 135](#).

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

#### Status display in the instrument cluster display



illuminated – a front seat belt is not fastened



illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened



illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

## Operation

### Fastening the seat belt



- › Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- › Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- › Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

### Unfastening the seat belt



- › Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- › Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

## Setting



- › Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



- › Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
- › After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

## Troubleshooting

### Blocked belt retractor



- › Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly in the direction of the arrow.
- › Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
- › Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
- › If the strap is still blocked, repeat the un-

locking procedure once or twice.

- › If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Child seat

### What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please note the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 the European Economic Commission.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 are marked with the test symbol: large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the standard ECE-R 44.

### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ When installing the child seat on the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- ▶ Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- ▶ If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- ▶ If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top edge of the headrest.

### Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers.



Sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- ▶ When using a rear-facing child seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.
- ▶ If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- ▶ If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- ▶ Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- ▶ Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- ▶ For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- ▶ Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

### Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

| Group | Weight of the child |
|-------|---------------------|
| 0     | up to 10 kg         |
| 0+    | up to 13 kg         |
| 1     | 9-18 kg             |
| 2     | 15-25 kg            |
| 3     | 22-36 kg            |

#### Recommended child seats

| Group             | Manufacturer | Type                    | Attachment            | Order number | Approval number (E1 ...) |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 0+<br>up to 13 kg | Britax Römer | Baby Safe Plus          | Isofix base frame     | 1ST019907    | 04 301146                |
| 1<br>9-18 kg      | Britax Römer | Duo Plus TT             | ISOFIX and TOP TETHER | DDA000006    | 04 301133                |
| 2-3<br>15-36 kg   | Britax Römer | Kidfix XP <sup>a)</sup> | ISOFIX                | 000019906K   | 04 301198                |
|                   | Britax Römer | Kidfix II XP            | ISOFIX                | 000019906L   | 04 301323                |

<sup>a)</sup> For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

## Fasteners for child seats

### Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16.

#### Child seats that use the ISOFIX System

| Group             | Size category of child seat <sup>a)</sup> | Passenger seat with activated front airbag | Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag <sup>b)</sup> | Outer rear seats <sup>b)</sup> | Middle rear seat |
|-------------------|---|--|--|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 0<br>up to 10 kg  | E   | X  | IL   | IL                             | X                |
| 0+<br>up to 13 kg | E   | X  | IL   | IL                             | X                |
|                   | D   |  |  |                                |                  |
|                   | C   |  |  |                                |                  |
| 1<br>9-18 kg      | D   | IUF  | IL<br>IUF  | IL<br>IUF                      | X                |
|                   | C   |  |  |                                |                  |
|                   | B   |  |  |                                |                  |
|                   | B1  |  |  |                                |                  |
|                   | A   |  |  |                                |                  |
| 2<br>15-25 kg     | -   | IUF  | IL   | IL                             | X                |
| 3<br>22-36 kg     | -   | IUF  | IL   | IL                             | X                |

<sup>a)</sup> The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.  
<sup>b)</sup> The seat is suitable for an ISO/R3 fixing.

**IL** The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

**IUF** The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

**X** The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX System.

#### i-Size

| Passenger seat with activated front airbag | Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag | Outer rear seats | Middle rear seat |
|--|--|------------------|------------------|
| i-UF                                       | i-U  | i-U              | X                |

**i-UF** The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

**i-U** The seat is suitable for forward- and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

**X** The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

**Child seat fastened with a safety belt**

| Group             | Passenger seat with activated front air-bag | Passenger seat with deactivated front air-bag | Outer rear seats | Middle rear seat <sup>a)</sup> |
|-------------------|---|---|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 0<br>up to 10 kg  | X   | U <sup>b)</sup>                               | U                | U                              |
| 0+<br>up to 13 kg | X   | U <sup>b)</sup>                               | U                | U                              |
| 1<br>9-18 kg      | UF  | U   | U                | U                              |
| 2<br>15-25 kg     | UF  | U   | U                | U                              |
| 3<br>22-36 kg     | UF  | U   | U                | U                              |

<sup>a)</sup> It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support foot in the middle rear seat.

<sup>b)</sup> Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

**U** The seat is suitable for the child seat category "Universal" and is permitted for use in this weight group.

**UF** The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

**X** The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

**Overview**
**ISOFIX**
**⚠ WARNING**

- ▶ Do not attach any other child seats, straps or objects to the holding eyelets provided for the installation of a child seat using the ISOFIX system.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats and possibly on the front passenger seat.

A child seat that uses the ISOFIX system can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.



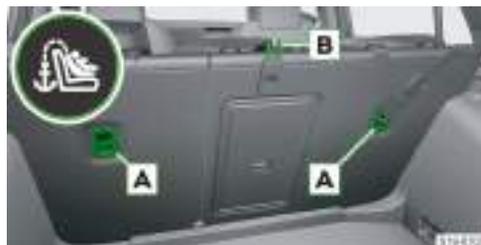
- ▶ Fold back the covers before installing the child seat.

**TOP TETHER**
**⚠ WARNING**

- ▶ Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted

with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.

- ▶ Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.
- ▶ When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.



Holding eyelets on the rear seats



Holding eyelet on the passenger seat

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child

seat. The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats **A**, as well as on the middle rear seat **B** or passenger seat when necessary.

## Airbags

### Usage

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions, as a supplement to the seat belts.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

### Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

**i** As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

#### Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

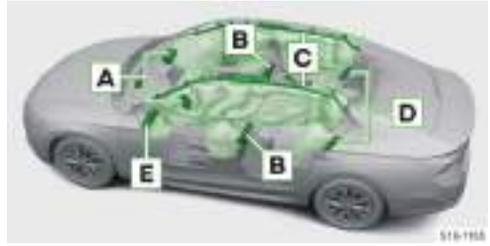
- ▶ Maintain the correct seating position.
- ▶ Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed.

- ▶ Minor frontal and side collisions.
- ▶ Rear-end collision.
- ▶ Vehicle rollover.

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

### Airbag overview



- A** Front airbags
- B** Side airbags - front
- C** Head airbags
- D** Side airbags - rear
- E** Driver's knee airbag

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering **AIRBAG**.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- ▶ Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- ▶ Do not use seat covers that have not been made by ŠKODA.
- ▶ Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

#### Deactivating the airbags

We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » [page 47, Operation](#) by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- ▶ If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
- ▶ Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
- ▶ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

 illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

#### ⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

## Conditions

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.

## Troubleshooting

### Airbag system faulty

-  illuminates  
Message regarding an airbag fault
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Key switch for the front passenger airbag

### Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example.

- ▶ A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

- ▶ Only deactivate the airbag when the ignition is switched off!

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!

- ▶ If the front passenger airbag has been deactivated with the key, do not leave the key in the key switch while driving. Vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and activate the airbag!

### Operation

#### Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag

- › Remove the key bit.

### Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the passenger door.
- › Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
- › To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
- › To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
- › Remove the key bit from the slot.
- › Close the passenger door.
- › Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

### Indicator lights



- ▶ After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
- ▶ If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
- ▶ One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch.

**OFF**  lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

**ON**  lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

### Troubleshooting

#### Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

**ON**  flashes together with **OFF** :  
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

- › Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

## Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

### Exterior lighting

#### Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

#### Daylight running lights

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

**i** For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

#### Automatically switch lights on/off

The light is automatically switched on or off according to the given lighting conditions and vehicle operation (standstill/travel).

Some of the following lighting functions turn on/off automatically.

- ▶ Dipped beam and parking lights.
- ▶ Daylight running lights.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

The automatic dipping and parking light switching is indicated by the illumination of the  symbol in the light switch.

#### Switching low beam on/off automatically in rain

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The function is activated.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the  symbol in the light switch.

#### Full LED headlights

When the light switch is in mode **AUTO**, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle.

The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

#### CORNER function

The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

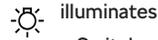
Operating conditions

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

- ✓ Visibility is reduced in the area around the vehicle.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

#### When no light is switched on

The control light  may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.



- ▶ Switch on the light.

#### Operation

##### Light modes



The light mode can be selected using the switch .

- ▶ Press the  switch repeatedly and select the desired mode.

The information on the selected mode is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster display.

play.

The menu with available light modes varies depending on the given lighting conditions and the vehicle operation (standstill/drive).

##### ▶ **AUTO - Automatic mode**

Automatic switching on/off of dipped, parking or daytime running lights.

- ▶ In the light switch, **AUTO** is illuminated.

Even if the dipped beam is automatically turned on, the switch  also lights up.

##### ▶ - Dipped beam

Turning on the dipped beam.

- ▶ In the light switch,  is illuminated.

##### ▶ - Sidelights

Switching on the sidelights.

- ▶ In the light switch,  is illuminated.

##### ▶ **OFF - Light turned off**

Turn off the light.

- ▶ There is no green warning light in the light switch.

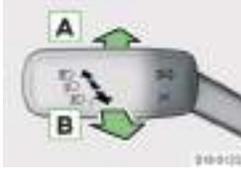
**i** After switching on the ignition, the **AUTO** mode is automatically set.

**i** Switching on the parking light and switching off the light is only possible when the vehicle is stationary or driving at a speed of max. 10 km/h up to a distance of max. 100 m. When one of the values is ex-

ceeded, automatic driving light switching takes place.

**Main beam**

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



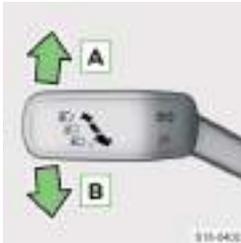
- A** Switch on the high beam - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates
- B** Switch off the high beam - in the instrument cluster, the indicator light goes out. Switch on the headlight flasher - the warning light is illuminated

**CAUTION**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

**Turn signal**



- A** Switching on the turn signal light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster
- B** Switching on the turn signal light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

ter

**Turn signal - convenience signalling**

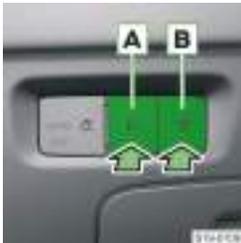
Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

- ▶ Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

**Fog light**



- Front/rear fog light switch
- A** Fog lights - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates
  - B** Rear fog light - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

- ▶ Switch on the respective switch (for fog lamp/rear fog lamp).

**i** The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

**Hazard warning light system**

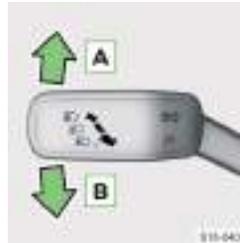
- ▶ To switch on or off, press the button in the central part of the dash panel.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

**One-sided parking light**

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.



- A** Switch on the side-lights on the right
- B** Switch on the side-lights on the left
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Move the lever to the appropriate position.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic

warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

**Double-sided parking light**

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the side-lights.

- ▶ Turn on the ignition.
- ▶ Choose light mode.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

The light may switch off automatically if the battery is low. If the two-sided parking light is switched on when the ignition is switched off, the light will not switch off automatically.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

## Settings

### Activating/deactivating the automatic headlights system in rain

The function is deactivated or activated in the Infotainment menu as follows.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > *Outside* > *Driving light*

- › Activate or deactivate the function.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.
- › **MENU** >  >  > *Outside*.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Driving light*.
- › Select the *Driving light* menu item and activate/deactivate the function.

### Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

The function is deactivated or activated in the Infotainment menu as follows.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > *Outside* > *Driving light*

- › Activate or deactivate the function.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.
- › **MENU** >  >  > *Outside*.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Driving light*.
- › Select the *Driving light* menu item and activate/deactivate the function.

### Headlight range control of the LED headlights

The headlight range control is carried out in the Infotainment system as follows.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > *Outside* > *Driving light*

- › Select the menu item for headlight range control.
- › Adjust using the slider.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.
- › **MENU** >  >  > *Outside*.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Driving light*.
- › Select the *Driving light* menu item.
- › Select the menu item for headlight range control.
- › Adjust using the slider.
- › Select the position of the control according to the vehicle's current load status.

- 0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
- 2 All seats occupied, boot empty
- 4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
- 6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1. 3. 5** can be used.

 For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

### **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.

- ▶ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

### Activate/deactivate dynamic cornering light function for Full LED headlamps

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > *Outside* > *Driving light*

- › Enable or disable the *Dynamic cornering light* function.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.
- › **MENU** >  >  > *Outside*.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Driving light*.
- › Select the *Driving light* menu item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic cornering light* function.

### Converting the Full LED headlights for the opposite direction of traffic - driving abroad

Settings for the travel mode type (left-hand traffic/right-hand traffic) takes place in the Infotainment as follows.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > *Outside* > *Driving light*

- › Set the travel mode.

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.
- › **MENU** >  >  > *Outside*.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Driving light*.
- › Select the *Driving light* menu item and set the travel mode.

## Troubleshooting

### Turn signal light defective

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

- › Check the turn signal light on the right.

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

- › Check the turn signal light on the left.

↔<sup>1</sup> does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

- › Check the trailer lighting.

#### LED bulb or light bulb is defective

☀ illuminates together with ⚠ Information appears in the display regarding the affected lights.

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

#### Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit

- › Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

#### Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened

Headlight defective.

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Driving lights defective

If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting

### Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.

### Settings

This function is set as follows in the Infotainment system.

- › Tap **MENU** > 🚗 > 🚗 > Exterior.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Comfort light*.
- › Select the *Comfort light* menu item and accept the settings for the functions.

## Light Assist high-beam assist system

### Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

### Operation

#### Switching on



- › Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

☰ in the instrument cluster lights up.

#### Switching off

- › Manually switch the high beam on or off.

### Settings

#### Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

- › Tap **MENU** > 🚗 > 🚗 > Exterior.
- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights*.
- › Select the *Headlights* menu item and activate/deactivate the *Light Assist* function.

## Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system

### Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

**Operating conditions**

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switcher is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

**Operation**

**Switching on**



▶ Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

☰ in the instrument cluster lights up.

**Switching off**

- ▶ Manually switch the high beam on or off.

**Function restriction**

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example.

- ▶ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.
- ▶ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

**Settings**

**Activation/deactivation**

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

- ▶ Tap **MENU** › › › Exterior.
- ▶ By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights*.
- ▶ Select the *Headlights* menu item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic Light Assist* function.

**Interior lighting**

**Operation**

**Switching on automatically**

The light switches on when one of the following events occurs.

- ▶ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ One of the doors is opened.
- ▶ The ignition is switched off.

**Automatic switch off**

The light switches off when one of the following events occurs.

- ▶ The vehicle is locked.
- ▶ The ignition is switched on.
- ▶ About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

**Operation of the lighting**

- ☰ Turn the front and rear lights on/off
- ☑ **OFF** Deactivation of automatic switching on (☑ OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the corresponding light.

The brightness level of the lighting can be adjusted by holding a finger on the light. The set brightness level is not saved once the lighting is switched off.

ⓘ If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

**Turn on the lighting for the make-up mirror in the sun visors on the windscreen**

- ▶ Slide off the cover of the make-up mirror.

**Settings**

Adjusting the brightness of the switch and instrument lighting is done in Infotainment in one of the following ways.



- ▶ Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

A window showing the slider for setting the brightness level opens.

- ▶ Adjust the brightness level using the slider.

Or:

- ▶ Tap **MENU** › › › Inside.
- ▶ By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the interior lighting menu item.
- ▶ Select the menu item for the interior lighting and adjust the brightness level using the slider.

## Interior ambient light

### Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

When the vehicle is locked, the lighting briefly turns red.

When the vehicle is unlocked, the lighting briefly turns green.

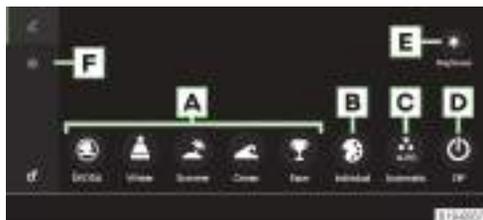
When one of the doors is opened, the respective door light is illuminated in red to indicate that the door is open.

### Settings

The background lighting is set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu.

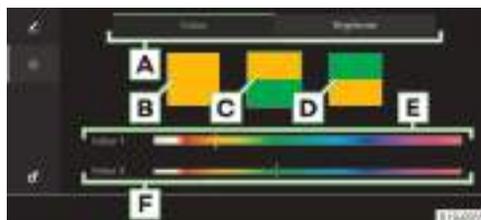
MENU > 

#### Pre-selection options for background lighting



- A** Factory-set pre-selection options
  - ▶ Only the general brightness level of the lighting is adjustable.
- B** User-selectable pre-selection option 
  - ▶ The lighting colour can be adjusted together for the dash panel and door area, as well as independently for the footwell.
  - ▶ The brightness level for the lighting can be set independently for the control panel and door area, as well as the footwell.
- C** Automatic selection option 
  - ▶ The colour and the brightness will change automatically depending on the selected driving mode.
- D** Turn off the lights
- E** Settings for the general brightness level
- F** Setting the colours and the brightness level for the pre-selection option 

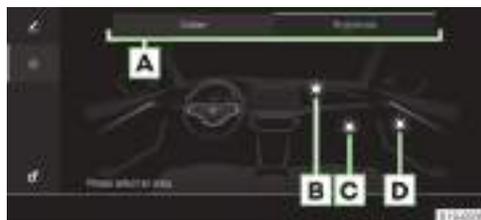
#### Setting the colour for the selection options



- A** Tab for setting the colours or the brightness level
- B** Option for uniform illumination colour
  - ▶ The colour is set using the slider **E**.
- C** Option for two-colour lighting
  - ▶ Use the slider bar **E** to set the colour for the dash panel and door area.
  - ▶ Use the slider bar **F** to set the colour for the footwell.
- D** Option for two-colour lighting
  - ▶ The colour for the dash panel and door area is replaced with the colour for the footwell.
- E** Slider for adjusting the illumination colour
- F** Slider for adjusting the illumination colour

- › Choose the preset option .
- › Select the tab for setting the lighting colour.
- › Choose whether to set a uniform lighting colour, if necessary, a different colour for the dash panel and door area and a different colour for the footwell.
- › Set the desired lighting colour using the sliders.

#### Setting the brightness level for the selection options



- A** Tab for setting the colours or the brightness level
- B** Setting the brightness level for the control panel area
- C** Setting the brightness level for the footwell
- D** Setting the brightness level for the door area
- › Choose the preset option .
- › Select the tab for setting the brightness level.

- › Select the area for which the brightness level should be set.
- › Set the desired brightness level using the slider.

## Windscreen wipers and washers

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed.
- ✓ Boot lid closed.
- ✓ Ignition is switched on.

### Operation

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

- ▶ Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

### Wipe and wash the windscreen



**HIGH** Fast wiping

**LOW** Slow wiping

**INT** Depending on the equipment:

- ▶ Intermittent wiping
- ▶ Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

**OFF** Switching off

**1x** Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

**A** ... Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

☞ Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

### Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. The cleaning interval can be set by a specialist company.

### Wipe and wash the rear window



☞ Washing and wiping the window (spring-loaded position)

Washing the reversing camera (spring-loaded position)

☞ Wiping

**OFF** Switching off

### Automatic rear window wiping

If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

### Settings

#### Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

- › Select the following menu.

**CAR** > ☞ > Outside > Mirror and wipers

Or:

**MENU** > ☞ > ☞ > Outside

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror and wiper*.
- › Select the menu item *Mirror and wiper*.

### Refilling windscreen washer fluid

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

#### ① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!

- ▶ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the headlights!

- ▶ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

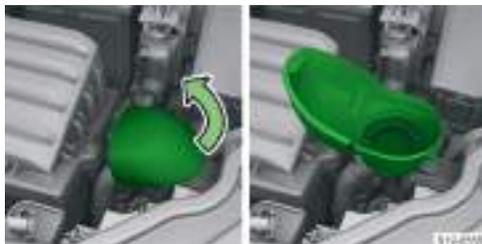
**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to engine compartment components!

- ▶ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 11.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 4.7 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



- ▶ Open the engine compartment lid » page 141.
- ▶ Gently open the top of the lid.
- ▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

## Troubleshooting

### Windscreen washer fluid level too low



illuminates together with ⚠

- ▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

### Frozen windscreen wipers

- ▶ Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

## Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

### Manually fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

- ▶ Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
- ▶ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.
- ▶ Switch the ignition on and off again.



- ▶ Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

The windscreen wiper arms are in the folded position.

- ▶ Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen.

### Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen via the Infotainment

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

- ▶ Turn off the ignition and close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
- ▶ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.
- ▶ In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Exterior > Mirrors and wipers

- ▶ Select the menu item for the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

The windscreen wiper arms are in the folded position.

- ▶ Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen.

Or:

**MENU** > > > Exterior

- ▶ By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirrors and wipers*.
- ▶ Select the *Mirrors and wipers* menu item and then select the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

The windscreen wiper arms are in the folded position.

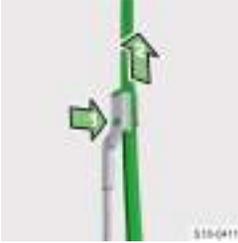
- ▶ Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen.

### Replace the windscreen wiper blade

**⚠ CAUTION**

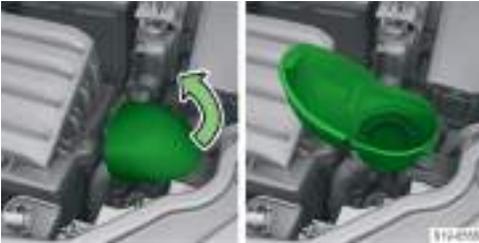
Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.
- ▶ Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



- › Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
- › Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
- › Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
- › Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

### Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



## Heating and air conditioning system

### Manual air conditioning

#### What you should be mindful of

- ▶ We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.
- ▶ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

- ▶ Always keep the fan on.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

- ▶ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

#### Operating conditions for the cooling system

- ✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

### Operation

#### Menu for operating the air conditioning

- › Press  under Infotainment.

The following menu will be displayed.

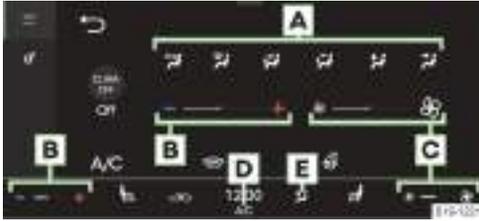
-  Show classic settings for the air conditioning
-  Further settings for air conditioning

 The menu for operating the air conditioner is also displayed in the temperature or blower settings in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

### Settings

- › Press  under the Infotainment and tap >  in the Infotainment screen.

The following menu will be displayed.



- A** Set the direction of the air outlet
- B** Set the temperature
- C** Set the blower speed
- D** Turn on the air conditioning
- E** Overview of the currently selected function

**CLIMA OFF** Switch air conditioning on/off

**A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » [page 31](#)

Turn steering wheel heating on/off » [page 39](#)

Switch the seat heating on/off » [page 38](#)

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

#### More settings

› Tap the functional surface on the Infotainment screen for further settings.

▶ *Automatic supplementary heater* – switch the quick interior heating on/off.

#### Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

#### Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

**I** During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

#### Troubleshooting

##### Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

##### Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

#### Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

### Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

#### What you should be mindful of

▶ We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.

▶ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

##### **WARNING**

Danger of misting!

▶ Always keep the fan on.

##### **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

▶ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

#### Functionality

Explanation of the individual Climatronic functions.

##### Automatic mode

Automatic mode keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

##### Smart air conditioning

Smart air conditioning is an automatic mode with preset selection options.

##### Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

##### Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

##### Air Care

*Applies to Infotainment Swing.*

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is switched on or off by touching the  ›Activate function surface in the operating menu of the air-conditioning system.

The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.

**Air Care**

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is switched on or off by touching the  ›Air Care function surface in the operating menu of the air-conditioning system.

When the Air Care function surface turns green, this indicates that the function has been switched on.

When the Air Care function surface is white, this indicates that the function has been turned off.

 After the function has been switched off, the Air Care function surface continues to be lit up green for a set period of time.

**Operating conditions for the cooling system**

- ✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

**Operation**

**Menu for operating the air conditioning**

› Press  under Infotainment.

The following menu will be displayed.

-  Display smart air conditioning with pre-determined pre-set options
-  Show classic settings for the air conditioning
-  Air Care
-  Further settings for air conditioning

 Only valid for Infotainment Columbus. The menu for operating the air conditioner is also displayed in the temperature setting in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

After it is switched on, the air conditioning is started according to the settings, before it is switched off.

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

Automatic operation is always started after switching on the air conditioning system.

**Settings**

**Set smart air conditioning**

› Press  under the Infotainment and tap ›  in the Infotainment screen.

Depending on the equipment, a menu with a number of the following functions is displayed.

-  Switch air conditioning on or off
-  Show the front settings
-  Show the rear settings
-  Ventilation/defrosting of the windscreen
-  Warm air flow in the footwell
-  Warm air flow around the body
-  Cold air flow in the footwell
-  Outside air flow into the interior
-  Switch the cooling system on/off
-  Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side
-  Switch recirculated air mode on/off
-  Switch the windscreen heater on/off » page 31
-  Turn steering wheel heating on/off » page 39
-  Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 38
-  Decrease the temperature
-  Increase temperature

The selected preset option is activated for a limited period of time.

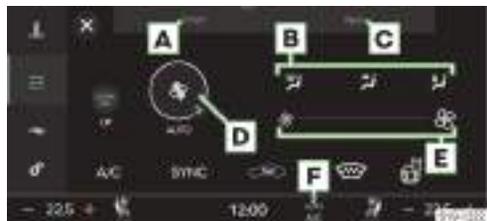
 To start the preset option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

**Set classic air conditioning**

› Press  under the Infotainment and tap ›  in the Infotainment screen.

The following menu will be displayed.

Applies to Infotainment Swing.



- A** Show the front settings
- B** Set the direction of the air outlet
- C** Show the rear settings
- D** Set operating power in automatic mode
- E** Set the blower speed

**F** Switch on Climatronic, overview of the currently selected functions

**CLIMA OFF** Switch Climatronic on/off

**A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off

**SYNC** Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

☁ Switch recirculated air mode on/off

☀ Switch the windscreen heater on/off » page 31

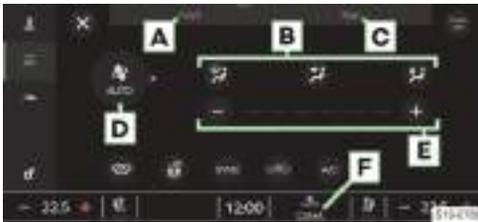
🌀 Turn steering wheel heating on/off » page 39

🪑 Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 38

🚗<sup>REAR</sup> Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater » page 38

- Decrease the temperature
- + Increase temperature

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.



**A** Show the front settings

**B** Set the direction of the air outlet

**C** Show the rear settings

**D** Set operating power in automatic mode

**E** Set the blower speed

**F** Switch on Climatronic, overview of the currently selected functions

**CLIMA OFF** Switch Climatronic on/off

☀ Switch the windscreen heater on/off » page 31

🌀 Turn steering wheel heating on/off » page 39

**SYNC** Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

☁ Switch recirculated air mode on/off

**A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off

🪑 Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 38

🚗<sup>REAR</sup> Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater » page 38

- Decrease the temperature
- + Increase temperature

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Infotainment screen.

**LO** Maximum cooling power

**HI** Maximum heating power

**i** During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

### Further Climatronic settings

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› Tap the functional area  in the operating menu for the air conditioning.

The following menu will be displayed.

▶ **Automatic air recirculation** - Switch the automatic recirculation mode on or off, which prevents unclean external air from entering the inside of the vehicle.

▶ **Automatic supplementary heater** - Quick interior heating on/off

▶ **Automatic windscreen heating** - Switch automatic windscreen heating on/off » page 32.

▶ **Automatic switching on of seat and steering wheel heating** when starting the engine (depending on the interior temperature).

### Further Climatronic settings

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

› Tap the functional area  in the operating menu for the air conditioning.

The following menu will be displayed.

▶ **Automatic air recirculation** - Switch the automatic recirculation mode on or off, which prevents unclean external air from entering the inside of the vehicle.

▶ **Automatic supplementary heater** - Switch fast interior heating on/off.

▶ **Automatic windscreen heating** - Switch automatic windscreen heating on/off » page 32.

▶ **Automatic switching on of seat and steering wheel heating** when starting the engine (depending on the interior temperature).

## Troubleshooting

### Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

### Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

**Automatic switch-off of the cooling system**

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

**Auxiliary heating and ventilation**

**Usage**

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

**What you should be mindful of**

**⚠ DANGER**

Risk of poisoning!

- ▶ The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

**⚠ DANGER**

Risk of fire!

- ▶ Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.
- ▶ The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

**Functionality**

The interior is heated or ventilated according to the temperature that is set in the auxiliary heating menu.

The system consumes fuel from the fuel tank when operating the heating.

**Operating conditions**

- ✓ The battery charge is sufficient.
- ✓ The fuel supply is sufficient, the instrument cluster does not light up .

**Operation**

**Switching on/off in Infotainment**

- › Tap on MENU >  > .

**Display of warning lights**

When the system is switched on,  lights up in the instrument cluster.

**Switch on/off with the radio remote control**

- › Hold down the corresponding key.



**A** Indicator light

**B** Antenna

**OFF** Switching off

 Switching on

- i** Hold the radio remote control with the antenna facing upwards.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- ▶ Protect the remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

**Display of the radio remote control indicator light**

- ▶ Lit up green for 2 seconds - switch on.
- ▶ Lit up red for 2 seconds - switch off.

**Range of the radio remote control**

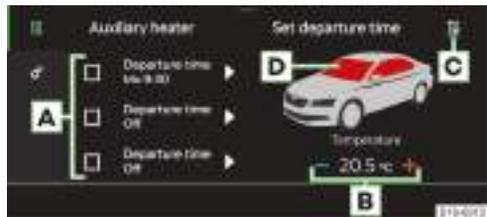
The range of the wireless remote control is a few hundred meters when the battery is full. For example, obstacles or weather conditions can reduce the range.

**Set automatic switching on**

**Display menu**

- › Tap on MENU >  in the Infotainment screen.

**Settings and information in the Infotainment screen**



**A** List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time

**B** Temperature setting

**C** Immediate activation

**D** When the heating is running, the windows are displayed in red

When ventilation is running, the windows are displayed in blue

 Setting runtime

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. To start the next preset time, this preset time must be activated.

**i** When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on every day without the need to select a day.

## Troubleshooting

### Smoke in the engine compartment

In the engine compartment, smoke and odours may form during the operation of the auxiliary heater. This is not a defect.

### Running the auxiliary heater after stopping the engine

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

### Indicator light in the radio remote control

- ▶ Flashes green in a slow sequence - the switch-on signal was not received.
- ▶ Flashes red in a slow sequence - the switch-off signal was not received.
- ▶ Flashes green in an irregular pattern - the parking heater is locked, e.g. because the fuel tank is almost empty or there is an error.
- › Check the level of fuel.
- › If the fuel quantity is OK, seek the help of a specialist company.
- ▶ Lights up orange first, then green/red - the battery is weak, the on/off signal has been received.
- ▶ Lights up orange first, then flashes green/red - the battery is weak, the on/off signal has not been received.
- ▶ Flashing orange - the battery is nearly discharged, the on/off signal has not been received.
- ▶ Not lit up - the battery is discharged, the on/off signal has not been received.
- › Replace the battery.

## Change the battery in the remote control



- › Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover in the marked area.
- › Open the cover and push it out.

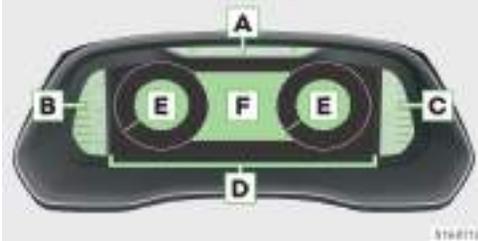


- › Use a screwdriver to loosen the battery in the marked area.
- › Replace the battery.
- › Insert the cover and push it until it audibly locks into place.

## Driver information system

### Digital instrument cluster

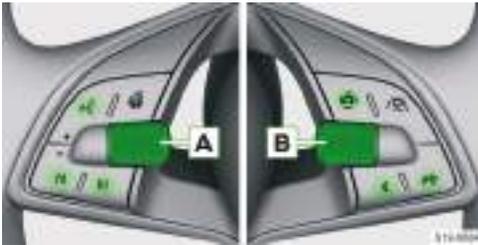
#### Overview



- A** Bar with indicator lights
- B** Coolant temperature gauge
- C** Fuel gauge
- D** Display
- E** Display area with selected information for the driver
- F** Central display area

#### Operation

##### Overview of the buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- Switch voice control on/off
- A** Adjust the volume and sound
- Switch to the next track/station
- Switch to the previous track/station
- Show menu of assistance systems
- B** Control the display of selected information
  - Change the display variant/menu items of the submenu on the left-hand side of the display
  - Change the display variant/menu items of the submenu on the right-hand side of the display

##### Adjust the volume and sound

- > To adjust the volume, turn the control wheel **A**.

- > To activate/deactivate muting, press the control wheel **A**.

##### Show menu with selected information in the display

- > To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the control wheel **B**.
- > To display the menu on the left side of the display, press the control wheel **B** twice.
- > To switch between information, turn the control wheel **B**.

For certain information, the submenu can be displayed by pressing the arrow button or .

- > To switch between menu items on the submenu, turn the control wheel **B**.

**[i]** The option to switch between information is indicated by arrows. This is only possible for a short time.

#### Settings

##### Setting the language

The language is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

**MENU** >

##### Setting the time

The time is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

**MENU** >

##### Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The manual brightness adjustment is carried out as follows when the dipped beam is switched on.

- > In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Interior > Ambient lighting

- > Adjust the setting.

Or:

- > In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**MENU** > > > Interior > Ambient lighting

- > Adjust the setting.

##### Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster display

- > In the display area with the selected information, choose the right or left menu item for the kilometre display.

- > Press the or button on the multifunction steering wheel.

- › In the displayed menu, select the menu item for resetting the odometer "From start" or "Long term".

### Reset the odometer in Infotainment

The counter is reset in the following menu.

**CAR** > 

Or:

**MENU** >  > 

**i** Resetting the odometer is only possible "from start" or "long term".

### Set the variant of the display

- › Press the  button or  on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.

### Select displayed variants



- A** Classic display
- B** Navigation announcements
- C** Driver Assist
- D** Basic display

## Driving data

### Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

#### In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

#### In Infotainment

The following information is displayed in the Infotainment.

-  Distance travelled
-  Driving time
-  Average speed
-  Average fuel consumption
-  Range

#### Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories.

Since start

- › Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

- › The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel

- › Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

### Operation

#### Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel



- › To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the control wheel **A**.
- › To display the menu on the left side of the display, press the control wheel **A** twice.
- › To switch between information, turn the

control wheel **A**.

#### Displaying driving data in the infotainment system

The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system.

**CAR** > 

Or:

**MENU** >  > 

#### Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it



- › To set the memory for the displayed driving data on the right, press button . Turn the dial **A** to select the corresponding memory or press the dial to confirm the memory.
- › To select the memory for the displayed driving data on the left, press button . Turn the dial **A** to select the corre-

press button . Turn the dial **A** to select the corre-

sponding memory or press the dial to confirm the memory.

- To **re-set** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button or . Turn the dial **A** to select reset corresponding memory or press the dial to confirm the re-set.

**Selecting the memory in the infotainment system**

The memory selection is made by touching the corresponding tab in the infotainment screen in the following menu.

**CAR** >

Or:

**MENU** > >

**Resetting the memory in the infotainment system**

The memory is reset in Infotainment as follows.

- In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Interior > Instrument cluster

- Re-set the associated memory.

Or:

**MENU** > > > Interior > Instrument cluster

- Re-set the associated memory.

**Settings**

**Setting units**

The units are set in the following Infotainment menu.

**MENU** >

**Head-Up display**

**Functionality**

The head-up display projects selected information onto the windscreen into the driver's field of vision.

**Restriction**

The function may, for example, be restricted or unavailable due to strong sunlight.

- Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

**Settings**

- Select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Interior > Head-up display

Or:

**MENU** > > > Interior

- By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Head-up display*.
- Select the *Head-up display* menu item.

In the displayed menu, the following menu items can be set.

- ▶ Activation/deactivation.
- ▶ Position.
- ▶ Brightness.
- ▶ Colour scheme.
- ▶ Selection of projected information.

- The position can also be set by turning the dial **A** on the multifunction steering wheel.



**Vehicle condition**

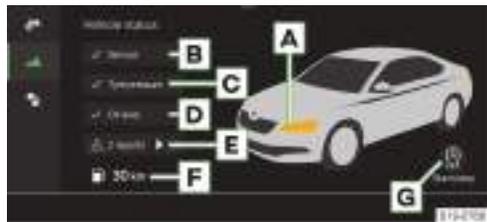
**Display**

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system.

**CAR** >

Or:

**MENU** > >



- A** Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings
- B** Service appointments and vehicle identification number (VIN)
- C** Tyre Pressure Monitoring System
- D** Information regarding engine oil level
- E** Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity
- F** Range

- G** Deactivation/activation of the START-STOP system

### Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

**i** The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the message is displayed for the first time, only the indicator lights  (Hazard) or  (Warning) remain displayed.

## Button SET

### Button SET

The  button allows quick access to the settings of the following vehicle systems (depending on the trim level).

- ▶  Switch off the START-STOP system » page 117.
- ▶  Switch off ASR traction control » page 125.
- ▶  Switch on the ESC Sport stabilisation programme » page 125.
- ▶  Interior monitoring » page 27.
- ▶  Tyre pressure monitor » page 159.
- ▶ Access to the selection and settings of the driver assistance systems.
- ▶ Access to other vehicle settings.

## Infotainment Swing

### Infotainment overview



- A** Touchscreen
-  Rotary control on the left
  - ▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
  - ▶ **Turn:** Adjust Volume
-  Rotary control on the right
  - ▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
  - ▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

**AUDIO** Radio and Media menus

**PHONE** Phone menu

**MENU** All menus

**APP/** SmartLink menu

- ▶ **Tap:** Display menu
- ▶ **Hold:** switch voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

**CAR** Information about vehicle settings

**SETUP** Infotainment settings

## System

### Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

### Basic settings

#### Setting basic functions

To **display** the available Infotainment system settings, proceed as follows.

- › Tap on **MENU** > .

Or:

- › Tap on **SETUP**.

The following basic functions can be set.

- ▶ Time and date.
- ▶ Language.
- ▶ Units.
- ▶ Restore factory settings.

### Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > ◀.

The following menu items can be set.

- ▶ Setting the equalizer.
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio.
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.
  - Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.
  - ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- ▶ Setting space optimisation.
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

### Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

- ▶ To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
- ▶ For **manual display**, tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

### Setting the MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows.

- ▶ Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
- ▶ Move the functional surface to a different position.

### Factory settings

Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

- ▶ Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- ▶ Tap on **MENU** > ⚙.
- ▶ Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm the reset.

❗ To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

## Troubleshooting

### Infotainment not responding

The Infotainment system must be restarted.

- ▶ Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
- ▶ Wait for the restart to complete.

## System update

### We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

### Determine system version

- ▶ Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Or:

- ▶ Tap **SETUP** > *System information*.

## Screen

### Overview



- A** Status bar
- B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C** Display/close the submenu window
- D** Display of the Infotainment control centre

## Operation

### ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

**Tap**



- ▶ Select function or menu item.

**Dragging up or down with two fingers**



- ▶ Quickly look through the lists.

**Press and hold**



- ▶ Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen.

**Settings**

The following basic screen functions are set in the **SETUP** > Screen menu.

- ▶ Image of the screen background
- ▶ Brightness level of the screen.
- ▶ Switch off the screen.
- ▶ Display the time.
- ▶ Confirmation tones.

**Infotainment keyboard**

**Keypad overview**

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- ▶ Alphanumeric.
- ▶ Numeric.
- ▶ Keypad for input.
- ▶ Keypad for search.



*Keypad example*

- A** Input line
  - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
    - ▶ **Tap**: delete the last character
    - ▶ **Hold**: delete all characters in sequence
  - : Show list of searched entries
- B** Entries searched for
  - ▶ Show details of searched entries
- C** Keypad functional surfaces
  - ▶ Switch to lowercase/uppercase
  - ▶ **ABC/ABB** Switch to the language keypad
  - ▶ **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
  - ▶ / Show additional keypad languages
  - ▶ Insert a space
  - ▶ / Move cursor to the left/to the right
  - ▶ **OK** Confirm the characters that have been entered

**Numeric keypad**



*Keypad example*

- A** Input line
    - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
      - ▶ **Tap**: delete the last character
      - ▶ **Hold**: delete all characters
  - B** Keypad functional surfaces
    - ▶ **OK** Confirm the characters that have been entered
- i** If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

## Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

### Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

- › To tap **Display searched entries** :

### Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

- › Tap  or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

### Further character variants

You can display further character variants by holding down the symbol.

## Setting additional keypad languages

- › Tap **MENU** ›  › *Additional keypad languages*.
- › Select the desired language.

## Control centre

### Overview

#### Display of the control centre



- › Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

#### Closing the control centre

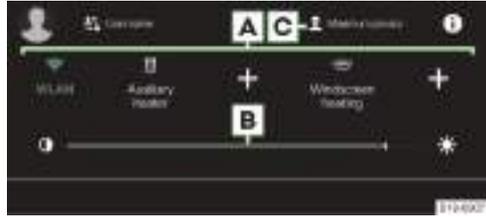
- › Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

- › Wait 5 seconds.

### Control centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



- A** Preferred functions
- B** Setting the instrument and key illumination.
- C** Setting the personal data protection level.
-  Display user account management.

## Settings

### Set functional surfaces of preferred features

- › To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the **+** icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.
- › To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.
- › To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on .
- › To **close** edit mode, tap on .

## Radio

### Overview

#### Display the player



- › Tap on **MENU** › .
- › Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

#### Close player

- › Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

#### Analogue and digital radio player



- A** Radio station logo
-  /  Switch to the previous/next station

The type of switching depends on the setting of the arrow buttons  $\leftarrow$  > Radio > Arrow buttons.

- ✦ Activate/deactivate muting

SCAN Switch the SCAN function on/off

### List of available analogue and digital radio stations

- > To **display**, tap on MENU >  $\mathbb{J}$  >  $\mathbb{R}$ .
- > Select the desired frequency range.



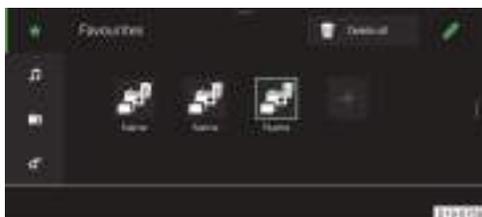
- A** List of available stations
  - $\leftarrow$  Show available frequency ranges
    - After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected
  - ▶ Station currently being played
  - ★ Station stored on the presets
- TP** A traffic radio station is set
- $\odot$  Manual update of the AM and DAB station list
- B** Option for sorting the stations in the list in alphabetical order, by name of station groups or by genre
- C** Select frequency range
  - After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set

**i** In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

### Preset buttons for preferred stations

The preset buttons for preferred stations can store stations in all available frequency ranges.

- > Tap on MENU >  $\mathbb{J}$  > ★.



- + Store current station
- ✦ Switch edit mode on/off
  - ▶  $\mathbb{R}$  Delete all - Delete all preferred stations

- ▶  $\mathbb{R}$  - Delete the desired station
- ▶  $\mathbb{R}$  - Change station logo

**i** The position of the stored preset buttons for stations can be changed.

- > Tap on  $\mathbb{R}$ .
- > Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.
- > Move the preset button to a different position.

## Operation

### SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

- > To **start automatic playback** in the player displayed in the **Radio** menu, tap on SCAN or press the right-hand rotary control  $\odot$ .
- > To **stop automatic playback** in the player displayed in the **Radio** menu, tap on  $\mathbb{R}$  or press the right-hand rotary control  $\odot$ .

### Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

- > In the list of available FM or AM stations, tap on  $\mathbb{R}$ .
- > To **search in sequence**, tap  $\leftarrow$  or  $\triangleright$  next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

- > Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

- > Turn the right rotary control.

### Restriction

- ▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- ▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- ▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.
  - Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- ▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

## Settings

### Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

- › To **display the station list**, tap on  in the **Radio** main menu.
- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- › Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

### Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

- › To **display the station list**, tap on  in the **Radio** main menu.
- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- › Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

### Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

- › To **display the stored preset buttons**, tap on ★ in the **Radio** main menu.
- › Tap on .
  - ▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on .
  - ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on  and confirm the deletion.

### Functional areas / for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations in the radio player** is set as follows using the functional areas / .

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *Arrow buttons*.
- › Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

### Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

### Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

- ▶ Traffic programme (TP).
- ▶ Radio text.
- ▶ RDS Regional.
- ▶ Automatic frequency change (AF).
- ▶ Regional station logo.

### Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

### Display the set station in the instrument cluster display

- › Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.
- › Hold the button  on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.

- › In the menu, choose the menu item *Info on track change*.

### Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *RDS Regional*.
- › Select one of the following menu items.
  - ▶ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
  - ▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

### Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio* › *Radio text*.

### Add the station logo

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to add logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

- › In the **Radio**  › main menu, tap on *Radio* › *Station logos* and select the desired station.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on  ›  at the desired preset button.

› Choose the available logo.

Or:

› To **import a logo** from an external source, tap on *Load my logo*.

› Select the external source with the logo.

› Find and select the desired logo.

 To turn off the logo display, tap on  in the list of available logos.

### Switch adding automatic station logos on/off

*Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.*

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *Autoselect station logos*.

### Regional FM station logo

*Applies to the FM frequency range.*

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *Region for station logos*.

### Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. E.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *Other DAB announcements*.

### Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *DAB - DAB station tracking*.

### Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *Automatic DAB - FM switching*.

### Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

› Tap on *Radio* › *Switch to a similar station*.

## Media

### What you should be mindful of

- ▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- ▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- ▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- ▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

## Overview

### Display the player



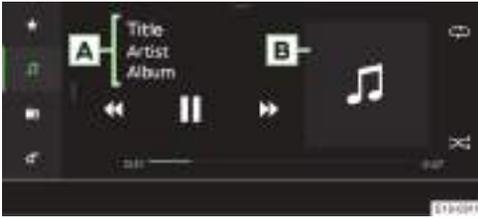
› Tap on *MENU* › .

› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

### Close player

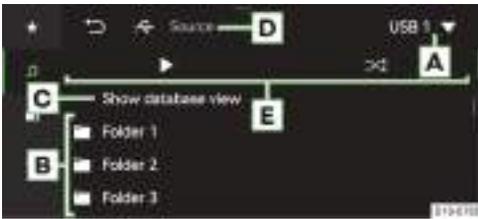
› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

## Media player



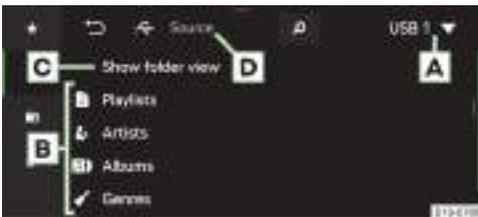
- A** Available information about the track, artist and album being played
- B** Album image

## Folder and track list



- A** Selection of the source
  - B** List of available folders and tracks
  - C** Display of the multimedia database
  - D** Name of the currently connected source
- ↳ Display of available sources

## Multimedia database



- A** Selection of the source
  - B** Folder for the multimedia database
  - C** Display of folder and track list
  - D** Name of the currently connected source
- ↳ Track search
- ↳ Display of available sources

## Supported sources and files

## Player controls

### Operation - Basics

- ▷ **Tap:** start playback
  - ⏸ **Tap:** pause
  - ⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
  - ⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
  - ⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
  - ▷ **Tap:** play the next song
  - ▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title
- ↳ Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

### Extended operation

- 🔄 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
- 🔄 Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
- 🔀 Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

## Restriction

### ① NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

## Settings

### Traffic

- To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

### Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

- In the **Media** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

### Safely disconnect the connected USB device

### ① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows.

- In the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Remove safely*.
- Select the desired device.
- Disconnect the USB device.

**Supported sources**

| Source            | Interface                                       | Type   | Specification  | File system            |
|-------------------|---|--|--|------------------------|
| USB               | USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support | MSC  | USB stick  | FAT32<br>exFAT<br>NTFS |
|                   |   |  | HDD<br>(without special software)  |                        |
|                   |   | USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol |  |                        |
|                   |   | MTP  | Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol |                        |
|                   |   | Apple  | Devices with an iOS operating system   | HFS+                   |
| Bluetooth® player | Bluetooth®                                      | -  | Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)  | -                      |

ⓘ Apple iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

**Compatibility of mobile devices**

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

► <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

**Supported audio files**

| Compression format | Codec type                    | File extension | Max. bit rate [kbps] | Max. sampling rate [kHz]      | Multi channels                        |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| MPEG               | MPEG 1 Layer 3                | mp3            | 32 - 320             | 32, 44, 48                    | Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo |
|                    | MPEG 2 Layer 3                |                |                      | 16, 22, 24                    |                                       |
|                    | MPEG 2.5 Layer 3              | 8 - 160        | 8, 11, 12            | Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo    |                                       |
| WMA                | Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1 | wma            | 8 - 384              | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48 | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo            |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 9.2       |                | 8 - 320              |                               |                                       |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 10        |                | 8 - 768              | 32, 44, 48, 96                |                                       |

| Compression format | Codec type     | File extension | Max. bit rate [kbps] | Max. sampling rate [kHz]                      | Multi channels             |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|---|----------------------------|
| ADTS               | AAC LC         | aac            | 8 - 640              | 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                            | Mono, Stereo               |
|                    | AAC HE         |                | 8 - 320              | 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                        |                            |
|                    | AAC HEv2       |                | 16 - 64              |   |                            |
| FLAC               | FLAC           | flac           | -                    | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96 | Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1     |
| RIFX               | WAV            | wav            | 64 - 3072            | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96         | Mono, Stereo               |
| SBC                | Bluetooth A2DP | -              | 8 - 345              | 44, 48  | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo |

**[i]** For files in MP4 format, only the soundtrack playback is carried out.

Files that are protected by **DRM-** and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

**Supported playlists**

| Codec type | File extension |
|------------|----------------|
| M3U        | m3u            |
| M3U8       | m3u8           |
| PLS        | pls            |
| WPL        | wpl            |
| ASX        | asx            |
| PLA        | pls            |

**Mobile device management**

**Cybernetic security**

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- › Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
- › Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

Malware in the vehicle can influence certain vehicle functions or deactivate them if necessary.

- › If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

**Overview**

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

**Display mobile device management**

- › Tap on **PHONE** › ☞ › *Select mobile phone*.

Or:

- › Tap on **APP/☞** › ☞ › *mobile devices*.
- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☞.
- › Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



Example of telephone management

- A** Main and additional telephone
  - B** List of known telephones
  - C** List of available telephones
  - D** Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function
- ↗ The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
  - 🗑 Delete telephone from the list of known devices

**i** To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the ↗ icon with the arrow, press and drag to the left. If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

## Limitations of mobile devices and applications

### Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

### Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

► <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

### Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

## Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

### Information about ŠKODA applications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

► <http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps>



## Connection set-up

### Bluetooth® connection between a mobile device and Infotainment

- Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
- Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Enter device name*.

- Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

### Bluetooth® connection between infotainment and a non-paired mobile device

- Tap on **PHONE** > ☞ > *Select mobile phone*.
- Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

### Bluetooth® connection between Infotainment and a previously connected mobile device

- Tap on **PHONE** > ☞ > *Select mobile phone*.
- Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
- Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

**SmartLink Connection**

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types.

- ▲ Android Auto
- 🍏 Apple CarPlay
- 📺 MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it » [page 80](#).

- › Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
- › Tap on **APP/☰** › **☰** › *Mobile devices*.
- › Tap on the connection icon on the desired device.

**Telephone****Telephone main menu****Display menu**

- › Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** › **☰**.

**Manage contacts**

- › Tap on **MENU** › **☰** › **👤**.
- › If two phones are connected, tap **▼** and select the desired phone.



- A** Preset buttons for preferred contacts
- B** Name of the main telephone/change telephone
- ☰ Call lists

- 🔊 Switch on the voice control of the connected telephone, if the telephone allows this

**I** If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

**Manage telephones**

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on **☰**.
- › Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



- A** Main and additional telephone
- B** List of known telephones
- C** List of available telephones
- D** Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function
- ↶ The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
- 🗑 Delete telephone from the list of known devices

**I** To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the ↶ icon with the arrow, press and drag to the left. If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

**Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment**

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.  
The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** › *Connect via Bluetooth* › *Bluetooth*.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.  
The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** › *Connect via Bluetooth* › *Visibility*.
- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.
- ✓ The phone is visible to the Infotainment.

**Telephone operation****Enter telephone number**

- › In the **Telephone** main menu, tap **☰**.
- › Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

**I** The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.

If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

**List of telephone contacts**

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the currently selected phone.

- › To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .
- › To **search** within the list, tap on .
- › Enter the details you wish to find.
- › To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

#### Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

- › In the **Telephone** main menu, tap  > .

#### Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

-  End connection / reject incoming call / end call
-  Accept incoming call
-  Return to the call on hold
-   Switch the ringer off / on
-  Hold a call
-   Switch the microphone off / on
-  Show details of the caller
-  Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone  
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.
- › To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap .
- › To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

### Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

#### Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment.

- ▶ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- ▶ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- ▶ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.
- › To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on  in the **Phone** menu.
- › Select the desired phone.

#### Connect the telephone to Infotainment

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in the menu item **SETUP** > *Connect via BT* > *Enter device name*.

- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

#### Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

- › Tap on **PHONE** >  > *Select mobile phone*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

#### Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

- › Tap on **PHONE** >  > *Select mobile phone*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

#### Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

- › To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on  in the **Phone** menu.
- › To **store the contact**, tap on .
- › Select or search for the desired contact.
- › If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
- › To **delete the contact** tap on  >  in the **Phone** menu.
  - ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on  and confirm the deletion.
  - ▶ To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

 The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

- › Tap on .
- › Hold down the desired contact until it is free.
- › Move the contact to another position.

#### Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

#### Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

- › For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ☞ › *Import contacts*.

#### Sort contacts in the phone book

- › In the **Phone** main menu, tap on ☞ › *Sort by*.
- › Select the desired sorting mode.

#### Number for the voice mailbox

- › To **set the voice mailbox number** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on ☞ › *Mailbox number*.
- › Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

## Wi-Fi

### Functionality

Wi-Fi can be used for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 3 mobile devices.

- › To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap on **MENU** › ☞ › *Wi-Fi* › *Connected devices*.

### Settings

#### Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

- › Turn on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot in the menu item **MENU** › ☞ › *Wi-Fi* › *WLAN hotspot*.
- › Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
- › In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** › ☞ › *Wi-Fi* › *Network name*.

- › Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** › ☞ › *Wi-Fi* › *Network key*.

- › Confirm the connection.

#### Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

#### Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

- ▶ Tap **MENU** › ☞ › *Wi-Fi* › *Network key*.
- ▶ Enter the password and confirm.

## SmartLink

### Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

### Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types.

- ▶ Android Auto.
- ▶ Apple CarPlay.
- ▶ MirrorLink.

### Overview of the SmartLink connection

#### Display main menu

- › Tap on **APP/**☞.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** › ☞.

#### Main menu - no connected device



- A** List of supporting connection types

#### Main menu - connected devices



- A** List of connected devices and available connection types

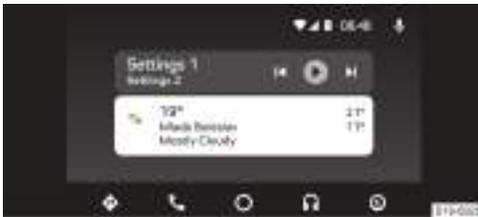
**Main menu - used device**



- A** Used connection type
- B** Available connection type
- × Disconnection

**Android Auto**

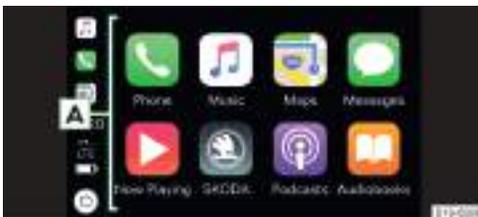
- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on □.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type ▲.



- ◇ Navigation applications
- ☎ Telephone applications
- Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
- 📁 Music applications
- Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu
- 🗣 Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

**Apple CarPlay**

- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on □.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type ▣.



- A** List of available applications
- Depending on the duration of operation:
  - ▶ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu

- ▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

**MirrorLink**

- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on □.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type ▣.



- A** Display of running applications
  - ⊖ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- Display of available devices
- ☰ List of applications
- ▣ Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- ⚙ Settings

**Connection conditions**

**General connection conditions**

- ✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto, Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

**Conditions for Android Auto**

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

**Conditions for Apple CarPlay**

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.

- ✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

### Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.  
A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consortium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

## Operation

### Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- ↶ Return to the MirrorLink main menu

## Restriction

### Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

**In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.**

ℹ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Establishment of a Wi-Fi connection is only possible in vehicles with online services, or when making an emergency call.

### Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

## SmartLink settings

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
- › Tap on **MENU** > ■ > ⌘ > *mobile devices*.
- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol 📶.

- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the Ⓜ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

### Apple CarPlay - Disconnection

- › In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
- › Tap on ×.

### Android Auto - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Android Auto.

### Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Tap on **MENU** > ■ > ⌘ > *mobile devices*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the Bluetooth®hands-free profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
- › From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the 📶 symbol.

### Android Auto - Disconnection

- › In the main menu of Android Auto Ⓞ > tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
- › Tap on ×.

**MirrorLink - Connection via USB**

- > Turn on the Infotainment.
- > Turn on the mobile device.
- > Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- > Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

**MirrorLink - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment**

- > Turn on Wi-Fi and visibility in the mobile device.
- > Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
- > In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.
- > Enter the required password.
- > With some mobile devices, communication between the device and the Infotainment in the notification bar of the mobile device must be confirmed.
- > Tap on **MENU** >  > *mobile devices*.
- > From the list of **available devices**, select the desired device with the  symbol.

**MirrorLink - Disconnection**

- > In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .
- > Tap on .

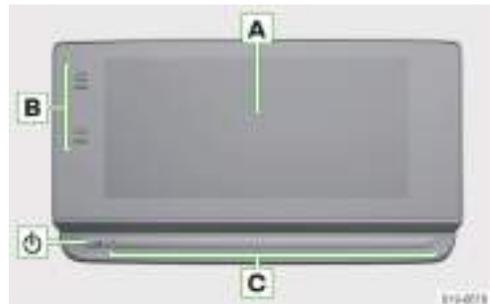
**Change to another device / connection type**

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

- > In the SmartLink main menu, tap on .
- > Select the desired device or connection type.

**Infotainment Columbus**

**Infotainment overview**



- A** Touchscreen
- B** Sensor fields
  - ▶ **HOME** - Preferred menus
  - ▶ **MENU** - All menus
- C** Progress bar for volume adjustment
-  Condition-based:
  - ▶ **Infotainment switched off**
    - ▶ **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
  - ▶ **Infotainment switched on**
    - ▶ **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
    - ▶ **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

**System**

**Restriction**

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

**Basic settings**

**Setting basic functions**

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** >  menu.

- ▶ Time and date.
- ▶ Language.
- ▶ Units.
- ▶ Restore factory settings.

**Sound settings**

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set.

- ▶ Setting the equalizer.
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio.

- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.  
Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.
  - ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- ▶ Setting space optimisation.
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

### Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

- ▶ To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
- ▶ For **manual display**, tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

### Setting the HOME menu

- ▶ To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen and drag to the left or right.

Add a preferred menu

- ▶ To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
- ▶ Tap a free space with functional areas.
- ▶ Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

The Infotainment only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with functional areas that are currently free.

- ▶ To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Remove the preferred menu

- ▶ To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
- ▶ Tap  on the desired menu.
- ▶ To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Add/remove one side of the HOME menu

- ▶ To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.
- ▶ Tap on ↗.
- ▶ To **add another page**, tap +.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

- ▶ Tap  to **remove a page**.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

- ▶ Tap  to **return to the edit mode**.

### Setting the MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows.

- ▶ Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
- ▶ Move the functional surface to a different position.

### Factory settings

Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

- ▶ Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- ▶ Tap on **MENU** > ⚙.
- ▶ Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm the reset.

 To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

## Troubleshooting

### Infotainment not responding

The Infotainment system must be restarted.

- ▶ Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
- ▶ Wait for the restart to complete.

## System update

### We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

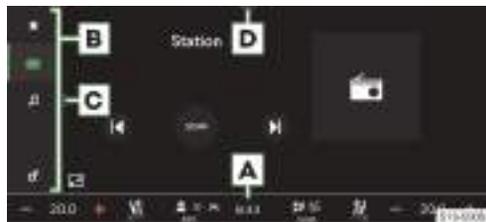
The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

### Determine system version

- ▶ Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

## Screen

### Overview



- A** Status bar
- B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C** Display/close the submenu window

**D** Display of the Infotainment control centre

**Operation**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it **lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

**Tap**



- ▶ Select function or menu item.

**Hold call**



- ▶ Zoom in to the map.

**Dragging up or down with two fingers**



- ▶ Quickly look through the lists.
- ▶ Change 2D/3D map display.

**Pulling apart with two fingers**



- ▶ Zoom in to the map.

**Pulling together with two fingers**



- ▶ Zoom out of the map.

**Turn two fingers**



- ▶ Rotate the map.

**Press and hold**



- ▶ Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen.

**Contactless gesture control**

Some Infotainment menus can be controlled by hand gestures.



- ▶ Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

**Displaying operation help**

- ▶ Tap on MENU > ■ > ✱.

**Settings**

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > Screen menu.

- ▶ Image of the screen background
- ▶ Brightness level of the screen.
- ▶ Switch off the screen.
- ▶ Display the time.
- ▶ Confirmation sounds and animations.

**Keypad**

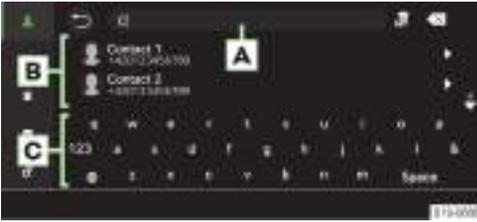
**Keypad overview**

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- ▶ Alphanumeric.
- ▶ Numeric.
- ▶ Keypad for input.

▶ Keypad for search.



Keypad example

- A** Input line
  - ▶ Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
  - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
    - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last entered character
    - ▶ **Hold:** delete all entered characters in sequence
  - ▶ Delete all entered characters
- B** Entries searched for
  - ▶ Show list of searched entries
- C** Keypad functional surfaces
  - ▶ Change sentence case
  - ▶ **abc** Switch to the language keypad
  - ▶ **123 / 12#** Switch to the numeric/character keyboard
  - ▶ **1/2 / 2/2** Switch to other character variants
  - ▶ Show additional keypad languages
  - ▶ Display the entered password
  - ▶ **OK / ✓** Confirm the characters that have been entered

**Numeric keypad**



Keypad example

- A** Input line
  - ▶ Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
  - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
    - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
    - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters
- B** Keypad functional surfaces
  - ✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

**i** If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

**Operation**

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

**Find**

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap .

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol .

**Show additional keypad languages**

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

**Further character variants**

- › Press and hold the character with the other character variant.
- › Select the desired symbol.

**Setting additional keypad languages**

- › For **Settings MENU** > >, tap *Additional keypad languages*.
- › Select the desired language.

**Voice control**

**Functionality**

**Voice control principle**

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

It is possible to interrupt a dialogue at any time and issue a new statement without having to wait for a complete response.

### Advanced voice control

The advanced voice control of the vehicle enables an online search and operation of the vehicle functions.

The advanced voice control understands fluently spoken, complete sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Infotainment is switched on.

### Operating conditions for advanced voice control

To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met.

- ✓ The vehicle supports the function.
- ✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to  Share my position.

### Operation

#### Voice control process

- › To **switch on** voice control on the multifunction steering wheel, press the  button.

Or:

- › Say the “OK Laura” activation command.

 The prerequisite for recognising the activation command is the switched on menu item **MENU** >  > *voice control* > *active*.

After switching on, the  icon is displayed.

- › Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the  icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the  icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

### Correcting a voice command

- › During voice command input, press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

### Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

- › Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Say the voice command “pause”.

### Resuming stopped voice control

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

- › Tap on  in the Infotainment screen.

### Stopping the played back message

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

### Ending voice control

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

- › Say the voice command “cancel” during voice command input.

### Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

### Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** >  > *Voice control*.

- ▶ Confirmation tones.
- ▶ Enable/disable use of the activation word.

### Self-help

#### Starting acoustic help

- › If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say “Help”.

The “Help” voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

**Displaying the help**

- > Tap on MENU > ⓘ > ⓘ.

Or:

- > If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say "Overview".

**Control centre**

**Overview**

**Display of the control centre**



- > Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

**Closing the control centre**

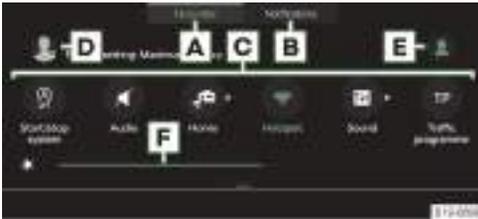
- > Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

- > Wait 5 seconds.

**Control centre**

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



- A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features.
- B** Display list of informational messages.
- C** Preferred functions
- D** Display user account management.
- E** Setting the personal data protection level.
- F** Setting the instrument and key illumination.

**Set functional surfaces of preferred features**

- > To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the + icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.
- > To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

- > To **close** edit mode, tap on ⌵.

**Radio**

**Overview**

**Display main menu**

- > Tap on MENU > 🎵 > 📺.

**Display the player**



- > Tap on MENU > 🎵.
- > Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

**Close player**

- > Tap on 🗑️.

Or:

- > Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

**Analogue and digital radio player**



- A** Radio station logo
- ⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station  
The type of switching depends on the setting of the arrow buttons ⚙ > Radio > Arrow buttons.
- SCAN Switch the SCAN function on/off
- 🔇 Activate/deactivate muting
- 🗑️ Close player

**List of available analogue and digital radio stations**

- > To **display**, tap on MENU > 🎵 > 📺.
- > Tap on ▼.
- > Select FM/DAB or AM.



**A** List of available stations

- ☰ Show available frequency ranges
  - After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected
- ▼ Select frequency range
  - After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set
- ▶ Station currently being played
- ★ Station stored on the presets

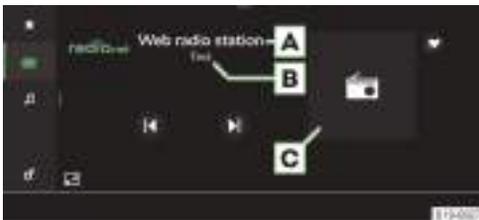
TP A traffic radio station is set

- The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station
- 🔄 Manual update of the station list

**I** In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

**Web radio player**

- ▶ To select a web radio station, tap on ☰ > ▼ > Web radio in the Radio menu.
  - ▶ Select a web radio station from the displayed lists.
- Or:
- ▶ Tap on 🔍 to search for a web radio station.



- A** Station name
- B** Information about the broadcast content
- C** Station logos

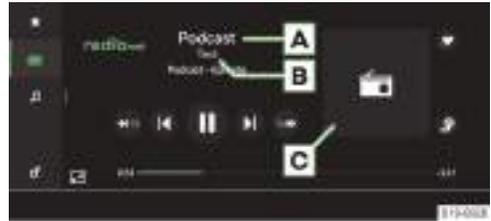
- ⏪ / ⏩ Switch to the previous/next station
  - The type of switching depends on the setting of the arrow buttons ⏪ > Radio > Arrow buttons.
- ♥ Display related web radio stations and podcasts
- ☑ Close player

**I** When the 🌐 icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

**Podcast player**

- ▶ To select a podcast, tap on > 🎵 > ☰ > ▼ > Web radio in the Radio menu.
  - ▶ Select a podcast from the displayed lists.
- Or:
- ▶ Tap on 🔍 to search for podcasts.

**I** The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 📻.



- A** Podcast name
- B** Information about the broadcast content
- C** Podcast logo
- ▶ **Tap:** start playback
- ⏏ **Tap:** pause
- ⏪ / ⏩ Switch to the previous/next station
  - The type of switching depends on the setting of the arrow buttons ⏪ > Radio > Arrow buttons.
- ⏏ 15 / 15 **Tap:** Fast forward/rewind 15 secs
- ♥ Display related web radio stations and podcasts
- 📻 View episodes of the podcast being played
- ☑ Close player

**I** When the 🌐 icon is displayed, no Internet connection is available.

**List of web radio stations and podcasts**

- ▶ To display the list, tap on ☰ > ▼ > Web radio in the Radio menu.



- 🔍 Search for web radio stations and podcasts
- 📻 Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

- ▶ 100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
- ▶ Go to podcasts and select
- ▶ Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country
- ▶ Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language
- ▶ Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

**i** The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 📻.

**Preset buttons for favourite stations and podcasts**

The preset buttons can be used to store stations from all available frequency ranges as well as web radio stations and podcasts.

- ▶ Tap on MENU > 🎵 > ★.



- ▶ ★ Store current station or podcast
- ▶ ✂ Switch edit mode on/off
  - ▶ 🗑 - Delete all preset buttons for preferred stations and media
  - ▶ 🗑 - Delete the desired preset button
  - ▶ 🖱 - Change logo

**i** The position of the stored preset buttons can be changed.

- ▶ Tap on ✂.
- ▶ Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.
- ▶ Move the preset button to a different position.

**Operation**

**SCAN function**

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

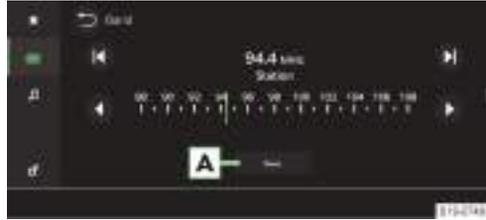
- ▶ Display the radio player.
- ▶ To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.
- ▶ To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

**Find stations manually**

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

- ▶ Display list of available sensors.
- ▶ Tap on 📶.

**i** For FM stations, the functional area 📶 is available when the MENU > 🎵 > 📶 > radio > Station display: > FM menu item is set.



◀ / ▶ Switch to the previous/next available station

◀ / ▶ Look for each other

**A** Store the currently selected station on a station key for the preferred station.

**i** Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

**Restriction**

- ▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- ▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- ▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.  
Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- ▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

**Settings**

**Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations**

- ▶ To **store**, tap on ★ > ★ in the Radio main menu.

**Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations**

- ▶ To **display the station list**, tap on 📶 in the Radio main menu.
- ▶ Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- ▶ Tap on ★ or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

**Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station**

- ▶ To **display the stored preset buttons**, tap on ★ in the Radio main menu.
- ▶ Tap on ✂.

- ▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on .
- ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on  and confirm the deletion.

### Functional areas for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations in the radio player** is set as follows using the functional areas  .

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > Arrow buttons.*
- › Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

### Functional areas for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface   in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap  > *Arrow buttons.*
- › Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

### Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > Traffic programme (TP).*

### Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > Radio Data System (RDS).*

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

- ▶ Traffic programme (TP).
- ▶ Radio text.
- ▶ RDS Regional.
- ▶ Automatic frequency change (AF).
- ▶ Regional station logo.

### Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > Automatic frequency change (AF).*

### Display the set station in the instrument cluster display

- › Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.
- › Hold the button  on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.

- › In the menu, choose the menu item *Info on track change.*

### Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > RDS Regional.*
- › Select one of the following menu items.
  - ▶ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
  - ▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

### Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .
- › Tap on *Radio > Radio text.*

### Add the station logo

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

- › In the **Radio**  > main menu, tap on *Radio > Station logos* and select the desired station.

Or:

- › In the list of preferred stations, tap on  >  at the desired preset button.
- › Select the desired logo.

 To turn off the logo display, tap on  in the list of available logos.

### Switch adding automatic station logos on/off

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

- › In the **Radio** main menu, tap on .

> Tap on *Radio* > *Autoselect station logos*.

**Regional FM station logo**

*Applies to the FM frequency range.*

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

- > In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ☒.
- > Tap on *Radio* > *Region for station logo*.

**Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off**

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. E.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

- > In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ☒.
- > Tap on *Radio* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

**Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations**

*Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.*

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

- > In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ☒.
- > Tap on *Radio* > *Show stations*.
- > Select one of the following menu items.
  - ▶ *FM / DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
  - ▶ *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

**Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off**

*Applies to the DAB frequency range.*

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

- > In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ☒.
- > Tap on *Radio* > *Switch to a similar station if weak reception*.

**Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts**

*Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.*

- > To adjust the sound quality, tap on ☒ > *Audio quality*: in the **Radio** main menu.
- > Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

☐ If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

**Media**

**What you should be mindful of**

- ▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- ▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- ▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- ▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

**Overview**

**Display the player**



- > Tap on **MENU** > **⌂**.
- > Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

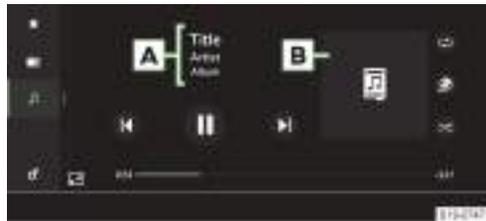
**Close player**

- > Tap on ☒.

Or:

- > Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

**Media player**



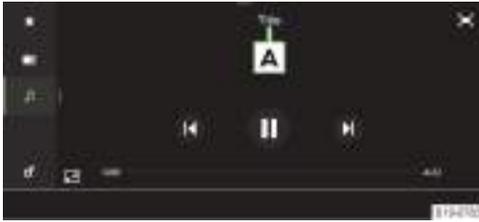
**A** Available information about the track, artist and album being played

**B** Album image

**Tap:** Show list of available albums

☒ Close player

## Video player



- A** Name of the track being played
- ✕ Zoom out of/in to picture display
- ☑ Close player

## Media list



- A** Select source
  - B** Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists
  - C** List of connected mobile devices
- ↳ Show available sources

## Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the pre-set buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

- › To **display the information**, tap on ★ in the **Media** main menu.

## Player controls

### Operation - Basics

- ▷ **Tap:** start playback
- ⏸ **Tap:** pause
- ◀◀ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- ◀◀ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- ◀◀ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
- ▷▷ **Tap:** play the next song
- ▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

- ⓘ Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

## Advanced operation

- ↺ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
- ↻ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
- ⌘ Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
- 📁 Save the played track in the "My playlist" playlist

## "My playlist" management

- ▶ To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on 📁 in the media player.
- ▶ To **display the playlist**, tap on 📁.
- ▶ Tap on ⏮ until the media list for the current source is displayed.
- ▶ Tap on 📁 > 📁.
- ▶ To **manage the playlist** tap ✂ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management.

- ▶ Control playback.
- ▶ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving + to the desired position.
- ▶ Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

## Restriction

### ⓘ NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

## Settings

### Manage favourites

- › To **store** the preferred medium, tap on ★ > ★ in the **Media** main menu.
- › Select a menu item from the following menu **A**.



- › To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ > ✂ > 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.
- › To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ > ✂ > 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.

**Traffic**

- › To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on  › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

**Supported sources and files****Supported sources**

| Source            | Interface                                       | Type   | Specification  | File system                             |
|-------------------|---|--|--|---|
| USB               | USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support | MSC  | USB stick  | VFAT<br>FAT16<br>FAT32<br>exFAT<br>NTFS |
|                   |   |  | HDD (without special software)   |   |
|                   |   | USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol |  |   |
|                   |   | MTP  | Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol |   |
|                   |   | Apple  | Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol  | HFS+                                    |
| Bluetooth® player | Bluetooth®                                      | -  | Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)  | -                                       |

**Compatibility of mobile devices**

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

- <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

**Supported audio files**

| Compression format | Codec type       | File extension | Max. bit rate [kbps] | Max. sampling rate [kHz] | Multi channels                        |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| MPEG               | MPEG 1 Layer 2   | mp2            | 32 - 384             | 32, 44, 48               | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo            |
|                    | MPEG 2 Layer 2   |                | 8 - 160              | 16, 22, 24               |                                       |
|                    | MPEG 1 Layer 3   | mp3            | 32 - 320             | 32, 44, 48               | Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo |
|                    | MPEG 2 Layer 3   |                | 8 - 160              | 16, 22, 24               |                                       |
|                    | MPEG 2.5 Layer 3 |                |                      | 8, 11, 12                |                                       |

| Compression format | Codec type                    | File extension | Max. bit rate [kbps] | Max. sampling rate [kHz]                           | Multi channels             |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|--|----------------------------|
| WMA                | Windows Media Audio 7         | wma            | 6 - 192              | 8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96                          | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 8         |                | 8 - 384              |  |                            |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1 |                | 8 - 768              |  |                            |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 9.2       |                | 8 - 320              |  |                            |
|                    | Windows Media Audio 10        |                | 32 - 768             | 32, 44, 48, 96                                     |                            |
| ADTS               | AAC LC                        | aac            | 16 - 2048            | 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                                 | Stereo                     |
|                    | AAC HE                        |                |                      | 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                             |                            |
|                    | AAC HEv2                      |                |                      |  |                            |
| MP4                | M4A LC                        | m4a            | 16 - 400             | 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                                 | Stereo                     |
|                    | M4A HE                        |                |                      | 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                             |                            |
|                    | M4A HEv2                      |                | 16 - 64              |  |                            |
| OGG                | OGG-Vorbis                    | ogg            | 8 - 576              | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96              | Mono, Stereo               |
| FLAC               | FLAC                          | flac           | -                    | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192 | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo |
| RIFF               | WAV                           | wav            | 64 - 3072            | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96              | Mono, Stereo               |
| Monkey's           | Monkey's                      | ape            | 8 - 192              |  |                            |
| SBC                | Bluetooth A2DP                | -              | 8 - 345              | 8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48                  | Mono, stereo, Joint stereo |
| OPUS               | OPUS                          | opus           | 6 - 2000             | 8 - 48   | Mono, stereo, Multichannel |

Files that are protected by **DRM-** and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

#### Supported video files

| Codec type     | File extension                   | Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s] |
|----------------|----------------------------------|--|
| MPEG 1         | mpg<br>mpeg<br>m1v<br>mPV        | 1.5  |
| MPEG 2         | mpg<br>mpeg<br>ps<br>m2v         | 15   |
| MPEG 4 (H.264) | m4p<br>mp4<br>m4v<br>mp4v<br>mov | 50   |
| MPJEG          |                                  |  |
| MPEG 4 (ISO)   |                                  |  |
| Xvid           | Xvid                             | 20   |

| Codec type | File extension | Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s] |
|------------|----------------|--|
| WMV9       | wmv<br>asf     | 50   |

**Supported playlists**

| Codec type | File extension |
|------------|----------------|
| M3U        | m3u            |
| M3U8       | m3u8           |
| PLS        | pls            |
| WPL        | wpl            |
| ASX        | asx            |

**Mobile device management**

**Cybernetic security**

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- › Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
- › Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

Malware in the vehicle can influence certain vehicle functions or deactivate them if necessary.

- › If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

**Overview**

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

**Display mobile device management**

- › Tap on **MENU** › › *mobile devices*.



**A** Connected / Previously connected devices

**B** Available devices

- ✔ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- 🎵 The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- 🗑 Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
- 📍 The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
- 🍏 The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- 📺 The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

**i** If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

**Limitations of mobile devices and applications**

**Availability of features**

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

**Compatibility of mobile devices**

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

- ▶ <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

**Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices**

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

**Applications in mobile devices**

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

**Information about ŠKODA applications**

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

▶ <http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps>



**Connection set-up**

**Connect a mobile device to Infotainment**

▶ Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.

▶ Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *device name*.

▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

**Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device**

▶ Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.

▶ Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

- ▶ Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- ▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- ▶ If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

**Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device**

- ▶ Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices*.
- ▶ Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
- ▶ Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- ▶ If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

**SmartLink Connection**

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types.

- ▲ Android Auto
- 📱 Apple CarPlay
- 📺 MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it » [page 102](#).

- ▶ Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
- ▶ Tap the icon of the supported connection.

**Telephone**

**Overview**

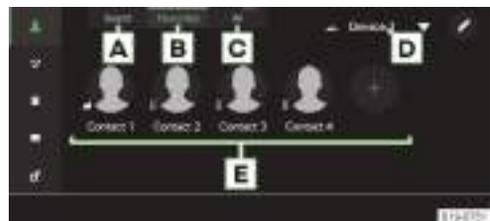
**Display menu**

▶ Tap on **MENU** > 📞.

**Manage contacts**

▶ Tap on **MENU** > 📞 > 👤.

▶ If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



- A** Contact search
- B** Display favourite contacts
- C** Display the list of all contacts
- D** Name of the main telephone
- E** Preset buttons for preferred contacts

❗ If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

**Manage telephones**

- > In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☰.
- > Tap on *Select mobile phone*.



- A** Main telephone, additional telephone and known devices
- B** List of available telephones
- C** Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function
  - ✓ The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
  - ✖ Delete telephone from the list of known devices

❗ To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the ✓ icon press and drag to the left.

❗ If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

**Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment**

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.
 

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ☰ > *Manage mobile devices* > Bluetooth.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.
 

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ☰ > *Manage mobile devices* > ☰ > *Visibility*.
- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

**Telephone operation**

**Enter telephone number**

- > Tap on **MENU** > ☰ > ☒.
- > Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.
- > To **connect**, tap on ✓.

❗ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts. If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

**Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number**

- > Tap on **MENU** > ☰ > ☒.
- > Tap on ☰.

If no voice mailbox number is entered, a menu for entering this number will be displayed.

**Telephone conversation**

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

- ☒ End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- ✓ Accept incoming call
- ✓ Return to the call on hold
- 🔔/🔔 Switch the ringer off / on
- 🔔 Hold a call
- 🔇/🔊 Switch the microphone off / on
- 👤 Show details of the caller
- 🔔 Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
 

The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.
- > To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap on ☒.
- > To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🗉.

**Conference call**

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

- > Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

- > Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area ✓.
- > To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area 👤👤.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

- 🔔 Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- ✓ Return to the conference being held
- 🔇/🔊 Switch the microphone off / on
- ☒ End the conference
- 👤 Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

- 👤 Show details of the conference call participants

- ☞ End conversation with the conference call participant
- 👤 Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

**Send a text message**

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☒ > ▼.
- Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.
- › Tap on ☒.
- › Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.
- The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.
- › Search for or select the recipient of the message.
- Multiple recipients can be added.
- › Tap *Send*.

**Display received text messages**

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☒ > ▼.
- Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.
- › Tap on ☒.
- › Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.
- To switch the display of messages as a conversation on or off**, tap on ☞ > *Show messages as a conversation* in the **Phone** menu.
- › **To switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on ☞ > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

❗ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 🗣️ is tapped.

❗ For a quick response to the selected message, tap on ☒ and select the desired answer.

**Display received text messages**

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☒ > ▼.
- Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.
- › Tap on ☒.
- › Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.
- To switch the display of messages as a conversation on or off**, tap on ☞ > *Show messages as a conversation* in the **Phone** menu.
- › **To switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on ☞ > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

❗ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 🗣️ is tapped.

❗ For a quick response to the selected message, tap on ☒ and select the desired answer.

**Send e-mails**

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☒ > ▼ > *EMAIL* > ☒.
- › Enter a subject for the e-mail.
- › Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.
- › Search for or select the recipient of the email.
- Multiple recipients can be added.
- › Tap *Send*.

**Show received e-mails**

- › In the **Phone** main menu, tap on ☒ > ▼ > *EMAIL*.
- › Select the desired e-mail.

The following functions can be selected in the displayed e-mail.

- ▼ Reply to all or just to the sender.
- ☒ Reply with a new e-mail.
- ☒ Forward e-mail.
- ⋮ E-mail management.

When the 📎 icon is displayed, the e-mail contains an attachment.

- › **To switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on ☞ > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

**Settings for Infotainment telephone functions**

**Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types**

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment.

- ▶ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- ▶ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- ▶ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.
- › **To switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **Phone** ▼ in any menu.
- › Select the desired phone.

**Connect the telephone to Infotainment**

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > ☞ > *Manage mobile devices* > ☞ > *device name..*
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

**Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device**

- › Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

**Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone**

- › Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.

Or:

- › Tap on **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

**Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts**

- › To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on 👤 in the **Phone** main menu.
- › To **store the contact**, tap on +.
- › Select or search for the desired contact.
- › If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
- › To **delete the contact** tap on 👤 > ✂ in the **Phone** main menu.
  - ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
  - ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

📌 The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

- › Tap on ✂.
- › Hold down the desired contact until it is free.
- › Move the contact to another position.

**Number for the voice mailbox**

- › To **set the voice mailbox number** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Mailbox number..*
- › Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

**Ringtone**

Some phones do not support the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

- › To **set the Infotainment ringtone** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.
- › Select the ringtone.

**Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off**

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

- › In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *HD voice quality*.

**Turn call rejection with a message on/off**

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

- › In the **Phone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Reject call with SMS template*.

**Sort contacts in the phone book**

- › In the **Phone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Sort by..*
- › Select the desired sorting mode.

**Import telephone contacts**

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

**Update telephone contacts**

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

- › For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Import contacts*.

**Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off**

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

- › In the **Phone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation*.

**Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off**

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

- › In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

**Wi-Fi****Functionality**

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

- To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Connected devices.

## Overview of available hotspots

### List of available hotspots

- To display the list, tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi.



- A** Search for available visible hotspots
- B** Connection to the hotspot via WPS
- C** Previously connected hotspots
- D** Available hotspots
- ⊙ Currently connected hotspot
- 🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection
- 📶 Signal strength of the hotspot
- 📶 Hotspot signal is not available

## Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

## Settings

### Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

- Turn on the Infotainment's WLAN hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Use as hotspot.
- Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
- In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Network name.

- Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Password.

- Confirm the connection.

### Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

- Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi Switch on > Find Wi-Fi.
- Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
- Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

**i** Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

### Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

### Data transmission with the connected device

- To turn data transmission with the connected device on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Connected devices > ⚙.

### Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

▶ Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Network name.

- ▶ Enter the name and confirm.

### Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

▶ Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Password.

- ▶ Enter the password and confirm.

### Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

- On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
- **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi: Tap > WPS quick connection (WPS button).

### Automatic WPS connection

- Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Quick connection to Infotainment system.
- In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
- Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

### Manual WPS connection

- In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

▶ Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > Wi-Fi > Quick connection to Infotainment system > **1** > WPS PIN.

- Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

- Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

**Automatic connection using the QR code**

- Tap **MENU** > ☰ > **Wi-Fi** > *Quick connection to Infotainment system.*
- In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
- With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
- Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

**Tips for a perfect connection**

- [i]
  - Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
  - Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
  - For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
  - If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

**Data connection****Settings****Types of data connection setup**

- By connecting the Infotainment to the external hotspot with Internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

- Using the **eSIM** for active ŠKODA Connect online services.

**Turn on/off the data connection for ŠKODA Connect online services**

For ŠKODA Connect, the prepaid data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared via Wi-Fi with another 8 connected devices.

- Tap **MENU** > ☰ > **Data connection** > *Integrated data connection (eSIM).*

[i] Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website.

- <https://skoda.cubictelcom.com>

**Overview of using the data connection of ŠKODA Connect online services**

- To display, tap **MENU** > ☰ > **Data connection** > *Data plans.*

[i] In the data connection overview, the validity of the data plans can be extended if this function is enabled by the user on the following website.

- <https://skoda.cubictelcom.com>

**SmartLink****Functionality**

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

**Supported connection types**

SmartLink supports the following connection types.

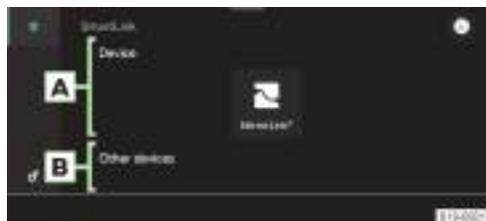
- Android Auto.
- Apple CarPlay.
- MirrorLink.

**Overview of the SmartLink connection****Display main menu**

- Tap on **MENU** > ☰.

**Main menu - no connected device**

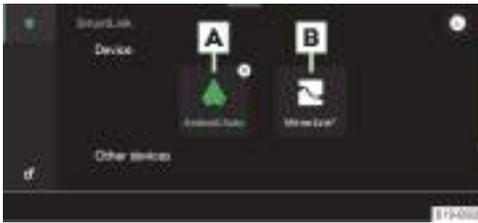
- [A] List of supporting connection types

**Main menu - connected devices**

- [A] List of connected devices and available connection types

- [B] List of available devices

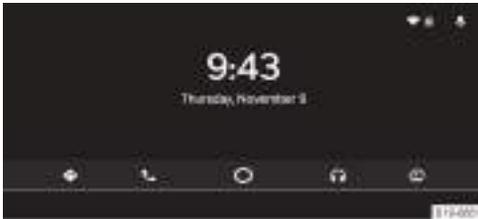
**Main menu - used device**



- A** Used connection type
- B** Available connection type
- ✕ Disconnection

**Android Auto**

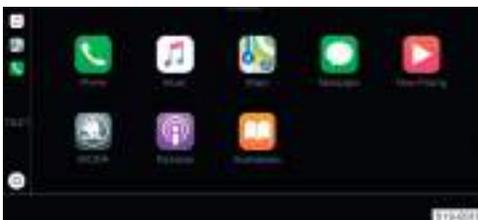
- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on ★.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type ▲.



- ⌕ Navigation applications
- ☎ Telephone applications
- Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
- 🎵 Music applications
- ⌕ Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu
- 🗣️ Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

**Apple CarPlay**

- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on ★.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type 📱.



- A** List of available applications
- Depending on the duration of operation:
  - ▶ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu

- ▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

**MirrorLink**

- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on ★.
- › Select the connected device.
- › Select the connection type 📺.



- A** Display of running applications
  - ⊗ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
  - ★ Display of available devices
  - ☰ List of applications
  - 📱 Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
  - ⚙️ Settings

**Connection conditions**

**General connection conditions**

- ✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto, Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

**Conditions for Android Auto**

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

**Conditions for Apple CarPlay**

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.

- ✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

### Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.  
A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consortium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

## Operation

### Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- ↶ Return to the MirrorLink main menu

## Restriction

### Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

### Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

## SmartLink settings

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
- › Tap on **MENU** > ■ > ⌘ > *mobile devices*.
- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ■.
- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

### Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the ⌘ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

### Apple CarPlay - Disconnection

- › In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
- › Tap on ⌘.

### Android Auto - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Android Auto.

### Android Auto - Disconnection

- › In the main menu of Android Auto ⌘ > tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
- › Tap on ⌘.

### MirrorLink - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

### MirrorLink - Disconnection

- › In the MirrorLink main menu, tap ★.
- › Tap on ⌘.

### Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

- › In the SmartLink main menu, tap on ★.
- › Select the desired device or connection type.

## Navigation

### Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

#### Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on > .

#### Turn off navigation announcements

› Tap on > .

### Overview

#### Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .

#### Map overview

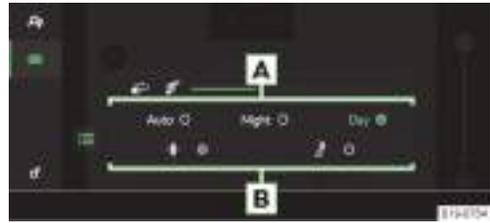
› In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on .



- A** Vehicle position
- B** Route
- C** Route view
- D** **Press and drag to the left:** Show route overview
- E** Following driving recommendation
- F** POI icon
  - Tap: Show destination details
- G** Tap: Change map orientation
  - ▶ North-facing 2D map
  - ▶ 2D map facing the direction of travel
  - ▶ 3D map facing the direction of travel
- H** Road signs for the affected route section
  - End route guidance
  - Centre the map on the vehicle position
  - Display menu for setting the map display

#### Select the type of displayed map

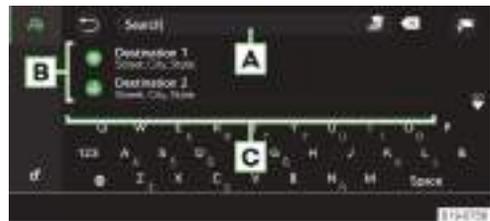
› In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on > .



- A** Display map in accordance with the following setting
  - ▶ **Auto** - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
  - ▶ **Day** - Map in day mode
  - ▶ **Night** - Map in night mode
- B** When route guidance is running, one of the following map displays can be selected
  - ▶ - Map centred on the vehicle position
  - ▶ - Map with the entire route/choice of alternative routes

#### Find destination

› In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on > Find.



- A** Input line
- B** List of destinations that have recently been searched for
- C** POI categories
  - ▶ Tap: search for the selected category
  - ▼ Show list of searched destinations
  - Enter destination via the address

#### Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.  
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

#### Enter destination via the address

› In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on > Find > .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on Start.

**Enter the destination using GPS coordinates**

- ▶ In the **Navigation**  > main menu, tap on **Find** >  > Enter latitude and longitude.

A menu is displayed for entering the destination using GPS coordinates.

- ▶ Enter the desired GPS latitude and longitude information.
- ▶ Tap on **Map**.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on **Start**.

**Selecting destination by tapping the map point**

- ▶ Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

**Suggested destinations**

- ▶ In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on  > **Suggested**.



- A** North-facing vehicle position
-  Delete the recommended destination
-  Destination with the home address
-  Destination with the work address

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories.

- ▶ Destination with the home address.
- ▶ Destination with the work address.
- ▶ Favourites.
- ▶ Last destinations.
- ▶ Predictive destinations.

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

When ŠKODA Connect online services are active, the connecting line between the destination and the vehicle can be displayed with the following colour coding, depending on the traffic density.

- ▶  Free-flowing traffic without delays
- ▶  Heavy traffic
- ▶  Slow-moving traffic
- ▶  Stop-start traffic with delays
- ▶  Traffic density information is not available

**Delete the suggested destination**

- ▶ Touch the functional area for the suggested destination and swipe left.
- ▶ Tap on .

**Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off**

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by Infotainment depending on the number of journeys and the daily travel time to the given destination.

If the predictive destination suggestion function is turned on, the destinations are displayed in the suggested destinations as well as during the search.

- ▶ Tap on  > **Basic function settings** > **Learn usage pattern**.

**Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations**

- ▶ Tap on  > **Basic function settings** > **Delete usage pattern**.

**List of last destinations**

- ▶ In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on  > **Last dests**.

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

 The list of recent destinations can also be displayed in the Instrument cluster display.

- ▶ Choose the menu in which the navigation is displayed.
- ▶ Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.  
The menu is displayed.

**List of preferred destinations**

- ▶ In the **Navigation** main menu, tap on  > **Favourites**.

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

**Destination details**

The details window contains a map, available destination information and functional areas for selecting functions.

The destination details window is displayed in the following cases.

- ▶ After a destination has been searched for or selected in the  menu.
- ▶ After a destination is tapped on in the route overview.
- ▶ After an item or POI icon has been tapped on in the map.



- A** Start route guidance
- ▶ ☆ - Save destination as a favourite
  - ▶ ★ - Delete favourites
- B** Press and drag to the left: Enlarge the window with destination details
- Depending on the destination context and destination type, the following functions are displayed.
- ▶ Demo - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode
  - ▶ Rename - Rename the saved destination
  - ▶ Call - Establish a connection to the POI telephone number
  - ▶ Edit - Option for editing the home or work address
  - ▶ Add - Insert destination into the route
  - ▶ Stop route guidance - Stop route guidance
- ⌚ Show route

### Route calculation



- A** Current vehicle position
- B** Proposed fastest route
- C** Alternative routes
- D** Destination position
- E** 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance
- ▶ **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown
- F** Start route guidance
- Show information on the selected route
  - ⌚ Set parameters for route calculation

### Route overview



- A** Information on current vehicle position
- B** Final route destination
- Tap:** the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ Show on map
  - ▶ Stop route guidance
- C** Destination provided by Infotainment on the route
- Tap:** the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ Show on map
  - ▶ Add stopover destination
- D** Route stopover
- Tap:** the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ Show on map
  - ▶ Add stopover destination
- E** Traffic obstruction on the route
- Tap:** the following menu items can be selected.
- ▶ Show on map
  - ▶ Avoid
- F** Route view
- When ŠKODA Connect online services are active, the connecting line between the destination and the vehicle can be displayed with colour coding, depending on the traffic density.
- ▶ — Free-flowing traffic without delays
  - ▶ — Heavy traffic
  - ▶ — Slow-moving traffic
  - ▶ — Stop-start traffic with delays
  - ▶ — Traffic density information is not available

### Change route destinations to each other

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

- › Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.
  - › Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.
- The route is re-calculated.

## Operation



▶ Move the map.



▶ Enter destination by tapping the map item.



▶ Switch 2D/3D map display.



▶ Zoom in to the map.



▶ Zoom out of the map.



▶ Rotate the map.

## Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

## Settings

### Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Avoid traffic congestion*.
- › Select the desired menu item.

### Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Fuel warning*.

### Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Country information at border crossings*.

### Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

### Switch road sign display on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment displays road signs on the route.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Road signs* › *Show on map*.

### Switching the speed limit warning on / off

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Road signs*.
- › Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

### Towing a trailer

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Trailer* › *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Route guidance settings* › *Trailer* › *Maximum speed for trailer*.
- › Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

### Setting navigation announcements

- › Tap on ⚙️ › *Navigation announcement settings*.
- › Select and set the desired menu item.

**Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off**

- › Tap on  > *Basic function settings* > *Learn usage pattern*.

**Delete information for suggesting frequently visited points of interest**

- › Tap on  > *Basic function settings* > *Delete usage pattern*.
- › Confirm the deletion.

**Show preferred POI categories**

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

- › Tap on  > *Basic function settings* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
- › Set favourite categories.

**Switching demo mode on / off**

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

- › Tap on  > *Basic function settings* > *Demo mode*.

**Defining the starting point of the demo mode**

- › Turn on the demo mode.
- › Tap on  > *Basic function settings* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
- › Select the desired destination to be used as the starting point for the demo mode.

Or:

- › Turn on the demo mode.
  - › Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.
- Destination details are displayed.
- › Display the window with destination details in full screen.

The window is enlarged by pressing the **I** button in the window bar swiping left.

- › Tap on *Demo*.

**Setting home address**

- › Tap on  > *Favourites* > *Home*.
- › Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the home address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

- › Tap on  > *Suggestions* > .

**Set the work address**

- › Tap on  > *Favourites* > *Work*.
- › Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the work address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

- › Tap on  > *Suggestions* > .

**Updating the navigation database**

Information on updating the navigation database must be requested from a ŠKODA partner, or refer to the following ŠKODA websites.

- ▶ <http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal>

**Automatic update**

Infotainment automatically offers an update option if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The "Infotainment Online" online services are activated.
- ✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

**Determining the navigation database version**

- › Tap **MENU** >  > *System information*.

## Online Services

### ŠKODA Connect

#### Functionality

ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

#### ŠKODA Connect website

► <http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect>



For example, the ŠKODA Connect website contains the latest information about the ŠKODA Connect services, a link to the ŠKODA Connect Portal and the option of downloading the ŠKODA Connect application.

#### ŠKODA Connect Portal website

► <http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal>



The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

#### ŠKODA Connect Application

The ŠKODA Connect application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

► <http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp>



#### Regulations

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the ŠKODA Connect application.

#### Conditions

Use of the ŠKODA Connect services requires prior registration of the main user and subsequent activation of the services.

For ŠKODA Connect Services functionality, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the ŠKODA Connect Services are provided. In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the  symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- **White** - ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- **Grey** - ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

#### Requirements for availability of the ŠKODA Connect services

Availability depends on the following conditions.

- Availability of ŠKODA Connect services in the respective country.

The availability can be checked on the ŠKODA Connect website.

- Availability of a mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.

The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

- Vehicle type and trim.
- Infotainment type.
- User Account Type.
- Activation of respective services.
- Protection level is set for the transmission of personal data.

### User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

#### Functionality

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
- ŠKODA Connect application.
- Infotainment, if it supports this function.

 When registering, create an S-PIN. You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

## Settings

### Register users in Infotainment

- › Switch on the Infotainment and in the welcome window that appears, tap *Change user* › *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** › **+** › *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

#### ① NOTICE

To complete user registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

### Activate ŠKODA Connectservices when registering the main user

After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

### Activate ŠKODA Connectservices of another logged in user

- › Tap on **MENU** › **+** › *Become primary user* › *Become primary user*.
- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

## Setting personal data protection

### Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

- › <https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data>



As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localisation services. Failure to do so may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree with the use of the localisation services, switch off the services by setting the respective level of protection for personal data.

## Functionality

When using the ŠKODA ConnectServices, the user and vehicle data, as well as information on localisation services, is sent.

How it is sent is influenced by the setting of the level of personal data protection.

The level of personal data protection that is set influences data transfer via eSIM. The data transmission of connected devices via Wi-Fi is not affected.

## Settings

The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

Any vehicle user can set the level of protection of personal data.

The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. This is set after the user has logged in according to the level that was last set.

For the some ŠKODA ConnectServices to fully work, it is necessary to enable localisation services.

### Settings in the control centre



- › Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Columbus

#### A Setting personal data protection

- ① Detailed information regarding levels of personal data protection

### Settings in the user administration

- › Tap **MENU** › **+** › *Privacy and service management*.
- › Set the desired level of personal data protection.

**Maximum privacy**

- ▶ All ŠKODA Connect Services other than the services you need are turned off.
- ▶ All localisation services are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched off.
- ▶ No online updates available.

**No position data**

- ▶ All ŠKODA Connect localisation services are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

**Use my position**

- ▶ The ŠKODA Connect localisation services are switched on. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

**Share my position**

- ▶ The ŠKODA Connect localisation services are switched on. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

## Information call

### Usage

The information call may respond to problems with the ŠKODA Connect services or be used in respect of information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

### Conditions

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to **Maximum privacy**.

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to **Share my position**.

### Operation



▶ Press the **i** button.

## Breakdown call

### Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the button **🔧**, the connection to ŠKODA break-down services is made. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

### Conditions

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to **Maximum privacy**.

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to **Share my position**.

### Operation



▶ Press the **🔧** button.

## User management

### What you should be mindful of

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend removing the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user is automatically overwritten.

**i** By setting the level of protection of personal data, the types of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced.

## Functionality

### User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management.

- ▶ Select user account.
- ▶ Register user.
- ▶ Activate ŠKODA Connect services.
- ▶ Add and remove user accounts.
- ▶ Set the main users.
- ▶ Set account security.
- ▶ Switch the assignment to the used key on/off.

## Overview

### Main User

The main user is a registered user with activated ŠKODA Connect services and a vehicle assigned to his/her account.

The main user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

All settings are stored in the main user's personal online account.

### User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are stored in the personal online account of the user who is logged in.

### Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

## Conditions

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts.

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network.

In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

## Operation

### Log in user

When the ignition and infotainment are switched on, the introductory log on screen for the last user account used is displayed.

**i** The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

- › Confirm the log-in.

When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

- › Select the menu item for switching user.  
A menu containing available users is displayed.
- › Select the desired account.
- › When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

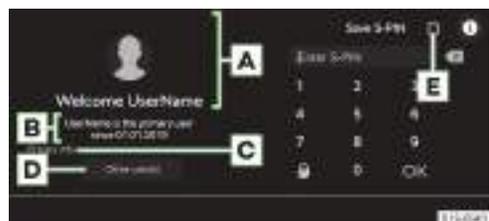
Or:

- › Select the menu item for switching user.
- › If you are a new user, tap + for the user's login.
- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

### Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon **Ⓢ**.

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PIN created when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or when registering the user in infotainment.



**A** User name

- B** Name of the main vehicle user
- C** Information about the set level of protection for personal data
- D** Display user account management
- E** Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN
- F** Display information about changing the S-PIN

**I** Verification of the user by entering the S-PIN can be switched off/on in the menu item **MENU** > **👤** > **⚙️** > *Protect account* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN*.

**I** Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

**Log out user**

When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed and the user is automatically logged off.

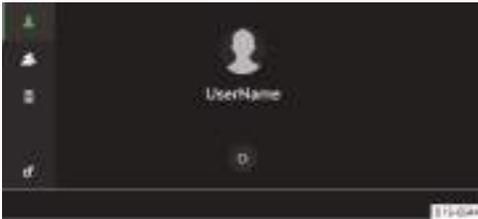
If the user account is protected by the S-PIN and the functional surface in the logout screen *Log out* is tapped, the S-PIN will need to be entered to log in after switching on the ignition.

If the *Log out* functional surface is not tapped and the ignition is turned on again within 30 minutes, no S-PIN entry is required.

**Settings**

**Manage current user**

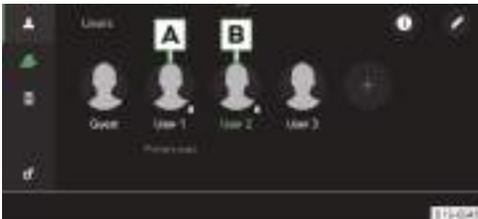
- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **👤**.



- 🔄 Sync online account

**User management**

- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **👤**.



- A** Main user assigned to the vehicle
- B** Currently logged-in user

- + Add a new user
- 🔒** A user account protected by S-PIN
- ✏️** Show edit mode
- 🕒 Show additional user management information

**Become primary user**

- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **⚙️** > *Become primary user* > *Become primary user*.
- > Confirm the setting.

**Delete user**

- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **👤** > **✏️** > **🗑️**.
- > Confirm the deletion.

**Delete the current user account**

- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **⚙️** > *Delete active user*.
- > Confirm the deletion.

**Delete main user account**

- > Tap on **MENU** > **👤** > **⚙️** > *Become primary user* > *Delete primary user*.
- > Confirm the deletion.

**Delete all users**

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

- > Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- > Tap on **MENU** > **⚙️**.
- > Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm the reset.

**I** To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

**Personalisation**

**Usage**

The personalisation service allows you to set, save and restore vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

## Settings

### Activate/deactivate automatic assignment of the vehicle key

If the function is turned on in the settings, the key with which the vehicle was unlocked will be assigned to the current user account when the vehicle is locked.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all personalised functions are set according to the user account assigned to the key.

▶ To **switch on or off** MENU >  >  >, tap on *Assign vehicle key automatically*.

If the automatic key assignment function is switched off, the key assignment will also be deleted.

## Management of online services

### Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management.

- ▶ Set protection of personal data.
- ▶ Show the list of available services.
- ▶ Receive information about the status of the services.
- ▶ Receive information about the validity of the services.
- ▶ Switch the use of the services on/off.

### Operation

#### Show the list of online services

▶ Tap MENU >  >  > *Privacy and service management*.

#### Show details of services

▶ Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions.

- ▶ Status of the service.
- ▶ Reason why a service is unavailable or who turned it off.
- ▶ Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is found.
- ▶ Expiry date of the service's validity.
- ▶ Switch use of the activation word on/off.

#### Switch use of the service on/off

- ▶ Tap MENU >  >  > *Privacy and service management*.
- ▶ Select the desired service from the displayed list of online services.
- ▶ Tap *Allow in vehicle*.

 The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

## Conditions

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network.  
In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

## eSIM data connection

### Usage

For ŠKODA Connect services, the prepaid e-SIM data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using Wi-Fi.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website.

▶ <https://skoda.cubictelcom.com>

### Operation

#### Display ŠKODA Connect data plans

▶ Tap MENU >  > *Data Connection* > *Data plans*.

The following information is displayed in the overview.

- ▶ Overview of the plans purchased.
- ▶ Use of the data plans.
- ▶ The plan is valid.

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

### Settings

#### Turn the data connection for ŠKODA Connect online services on/off

▶ Tap MENU >  > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)*.

## Online System Update

### Usage

The online update enables software updates for the connectivity control unit (OCU) and Infotainment.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

Further information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles and Infotainment systems can be found on the following website.

► <http://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update>



ⓘ If the download of the update is postponed, the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the option to download the update will be once again offered.

## Operation

### Download the update

- › Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- › Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
- › Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

### Install the update

#### ⚠ WARNING

The connectivity control unit (OCU) or Infotainment may not function during installation.

In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connect Services will be available.

- › **Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.**
- › Park the vehicle safely.
- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

The vehicle can be left while the installation continues.

- › Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
- › Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

ⓘ The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

ⓘ After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

## Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update.

- ✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched on.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
- ✓ The online update is available in the relevant country.
- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

## Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider.

- A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
- The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
- The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

## Shop

### Usage

In Infotainment in the Shop menu, the following activities can be carried out.

- Order new functions and services.
- Extend purchased functions and services.
- Buy subsequent ŠKODA Connect data plans.

Devices connected via Wi-Fi can also access the data plans.

Further information on the data plans can be found on the following website.

► <https://skoda.cubictelecom.com>

The functions and services can be subject to a runtime limitation or even be unlimited.

The functions and services that are purchased are available to all vehicle users.

The functions and services can also be retrofitted on the ŠKODA Connect portal website.

## Overview

- › Tap on **MENU** › ☰.
- › Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

## Conditions

---

The availability of the services and functions depends on the vehicle and Infotainment type as well as being country-specific.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and functions.

- ✓ Infotainment supports the activation of new services and functions.
- ✓ The vehicle trim level enables the use of new services or functions.  
If a service or a function is linked to a trim level that is not available with the vehicle, find out from a specialist garage whether the vehicle trim can be added.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged on.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

An active data connection is required for certain services or functions. The connection may be chargeable.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

## Restriction

---

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

## Service schedules

### Usage

---

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

### Conditions

---

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

- ✓ On the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application, the service partner can be chosen.
- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.

- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to  *Maximum privacy*.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.

## Vehicle status report

### Usage

---

The vehicle status report function allows you to have online control over the condition of the vehicle.

The service is in the ŠKODA Connect application is available.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service inspection requirements.

### Conditions

---

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.

## Remote access to the vehicle

### Usage

---

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following.

- ▶ Trip overviews.
- ▶ Notification of the alarm triggering.
- ▶ Localisation service notifications, such as, for example, location, area or speed notifications
- ▶ Vehicle search, using horn and flashing signals.
- ▶ Remote-controlled vehicle locking and unlocking.
- ▶ Operation of the auxiliary heating.

### Conditions

---

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level.

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.

## Starting and driving

### Start

#### Notes on starting

##### ⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

- ▶ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

##### Operating conditions

- ✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

##### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!

The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

- ▶ Always keep the key with you.

#### Switching the ignition on and off



- ▶ Press the starter button.

#### Starting the vehicle with manual transmission

- ▶ Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- ▶ Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
- ▶ Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
- ▶ Press the starter button.

#### Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission

- ▶ Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- ▶ Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- ▶ Press the starter button.

ⓘ After switching on the ignition on vehicles with diesel engines, the indicator light  - Preheating system illuminates. The engine starts after  goes out.

#### Stopping the engine

- ▶ Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- ▶ Press the starter button.

##### ⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

- ▶ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

##### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

- ▶ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

## Starting issues

### Troubleshooting

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

- ▶ Do not start the vehicle by towing.

#### The engine does not start

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the battery of another vehicle » [page 150](#) or seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer

- ▶ Use the other vehicle key.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key

 illuminates

- ▶ Insert the key into the cup holder at the front.
- ▶ Press the starter button.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

**i** The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

#### The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

- ▶ Hold the starter button or press twice.

#### The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

#### The engine makes noises after the cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

## START STOP

### Usage

The START STOP system reduces environmentally damaging emissions, including CO<sub>2</sub>, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

### Functionality

#### Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

#### Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the accelerator pedal is pressed down. When the Auto Hold function is deactivated, a system-related engine start occurs after releasing the brake pedal.

#### Status display in the instrument cluster display

 Engine is switched off via the START-STOP system

 Engine is not switched off via the START-STOP system due to operating conditions that are not met

### Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

### Settings

#### Automatic activation

- ▶ Upon start-up of the engine.
- ▶ By selecting driving mode Eco » [page 120, Operation](#).

#### Deactivate/activate system

- ▶ Press the  button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

### Troubleshooting

#### The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

## Manual gearbox

### Operation

#### ① NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

- ▶ Shift to a higher gear before reaching the red area on the tachometer scale.

#### ① NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

- ▶ Fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- ▶ When not shifting gear, do not put your hand on the shift lever.

#### Engaging reverse gear

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Fully depress the clutch.
- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
- › Push the shift lever down.
- › Turn it completely to the left.
- › Wait briefly.
- › Engage reverse gear.

## Automatic gearbox

### Automatic gearbox modes

#### Select automatic gearbox mode

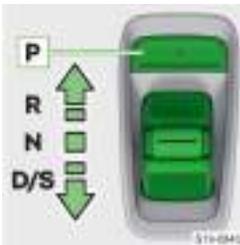
- › To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector lever then returns to the starting position.

- › Press the key **P** to choose the mode **P**.

① The selector lever can be moved forwards or backwards between two positions. As a result, the mode **D/S** for example can be directly selected from mode **R** and vice versa.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



#### **P** Parked vehicle

The drive wheels are locked.

Select the mode **P** only when the vehicle is stationary.

#### **R** Reverse gear

The **R** mode can be selected at a speed below 10 km/h.

#### **N** Neutral

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

#### **D/S** Forward drive / sports program

In **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in **D** mode.

The choice between **D** and **S** is made by moving the selector lever to the rear.

① To choose mode **D**, **S** or **R**, the engine must be already started. Only mode **N** can be selected with the engine stopped and the ignition switched on. This can, for example, be useful when towing the vehicle or when driving through a car wash.

#### Unlock automatic gearbox from mode **P**



is lit up - the automatic gearbox is in mode **P**

- › Press the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!

- ▶ When the mode **D**, **S**, **R** or **N** is selected, secure the vehicle with the brake.

### Operation

#### Starting up

- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Start the engine.
- › Use the selector lever to select the desired mode.
- › Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

#### Speeding up while driving (kick-down)

- › Fully depress the accelerator.

#### Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

- › Leave the selected mode **D/S** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

#### Stopping

- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Choose the **P** mode.
- › Turn off the engine.

① When turning off the engine in mode **D**, **S** or **R** then mode **P** is automatically selected.

#### Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

Ⓢ will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### Requirements for driving in neutral position

- ✓ **D** mode is chosen.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
- ✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

**Acceleration on start-up (launch control)**

This function allows maximum acceleration during start-up.

- › Select **S** mode or manual shift mode.
- › Disable the TCS » page 125.
- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Fully depress the accelerator.
- › Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle drives with maximum acceleration.

**Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel**

- Changing down a gear
- + Changing up a gear

- › To **switch on** the shift paddle, press - or +.
- › To **turn off** the shift paddle + hold or select another mode.

**i** If none of the shift paddles are pressed in mode **D** for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

In mode **S**, there is no automatic switch-off of the manual switching mode.

**If the engine threatens to over-rev**

- ▶ The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
- ▶ The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

**Troubleshooting****The automatic transmission mode cannot be set in the usual way**

- › Mechanically unlock the selector lever » page 119.

**Gearbox overheated**

illuminates together with ⚠  
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.



illuminates together with ⚠  
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

- › Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
- › After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
- › If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Gearbox impaired**

illuminates together with ⚠  
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.



illuminates together with ⚠  
Message regarding a gearbox fault

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Starting up a vehicle that is stuck**

- › Adjust the selector lever between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

**Mechanical release of automatic gearbox**

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



- › Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow **A**.
- › Carefully loosen and lift the quadrant cover.



- › Loosen the pull rod in the direction of the arrows **1** and **2**.
- › Pull the pull rod out until it stops.
- › Press button **B** to fix the pull rod in the pulled out position.

**Vehicle driving mode****Usage**

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

## Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

### Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed driving style and helps to save fuel.

### Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

### Normal mode

Normal mode is suitable for a normal driving style.

### Sport mode

Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

### Individual mode

Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

## Operation

### Select driving mode

- › Press the  button.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.

Press the button again  and the menu is closed.



**A** Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

**B** Driving mode menu

- › Tap the relevant function surface **B**.

**I** After switching on the ignition, the Normal mode is automatically selected.

## Troubleshooting

### Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

 illuminates together with 

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Economical driving style

### Tips for economical driving and evaluation of driving economy

#### Tips for economical driving

- ▶ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- ▶ Observe the recommended gear » page 62.
- ▶ Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
- ▶ Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
- ▶ Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
- ▶ Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 158.
- ▶ Remove unnecessary ballast.
- ▶ Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- ▶ Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- ▶ Do not leave the windows open while driving.

#### Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs.  in the instrument cluster lights up.

- ▶ Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
- ▶ A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

## Towing a trailer

### What you should be mindful of

#### WARNING

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

#### NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

#### Recommendations for using a trailer

- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
- ▶ For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases

the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.

- ▶ Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- ▶ A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
- ▶ Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- ▶ If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.

- ▶ Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
- ▶ Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

#### Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- ▶ Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- ▶ Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

### Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

| Engine type         | Transmission      | Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) <sup>a)</sup> |               | Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg) |               |
|---------------------|-------------------|---|---------------|---|---------------|
|                     |                   | Octavia   | Octavia Combi | Octavia                                 | Octavia Combi |
| 1.5 l/110 kW TSI    | Manual gear-box   | 1500  | 1500          | 660                                     | 680           |
| 2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR  | Manual gear-box   | 1500  | 1500          | 710                                     | 720           |
| 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR | DSG <sup>b)</sup> | 1600  | 1600          | 730                                     | 740           |

<sup>a)</sup> With gradients up to 12%.  
<sup>b)</sup> Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

## Towing eye and towing procedure

### Towing eye

#### Removing the front cap



- ▶ Press on the cap and remove it.

#### Removing the rear cap



- ▶ Press on the cap and remove it.

### Installing the towing eye



- › Screw in the towing eye.
- › Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
- › Tighten the towing eye.

### After the towing process

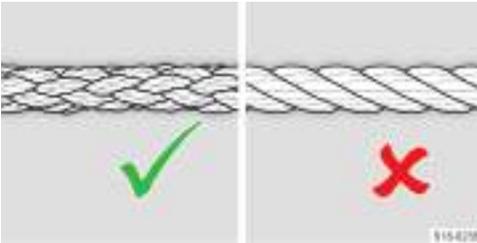
- › Unscrew the towing eye.
- › Insert the cover cap.

### Towing the vehicle

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ The tow rope must not be twisted.
- ▶ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.



#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

- ▶ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

### Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

- ▶ At the front towing eye.
- ▶ At the rear towing eye.
- ▶ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch.

### Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

- › Drive slowly and smoothly.
- › Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

### Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the N position.
- › If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.

## Brakes

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

#### ⚠ DANGER

Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!

- ▶ When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

#### ⚠ DANGER

Danger of the brakes overheating!

- ▶ Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
- ▶ If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

### Checking the brake fluid level

#### Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is off.

#### Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

- › If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
- › Do not refill liquid.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of **(C)**. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

**⚠ WARNING**

Danger of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.

▶ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Specification**

The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

**Changing**

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Danger of brake failure!

If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

**Troubleshooting****Brake fluid level is too low**

 illuminates

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty**

 illuminates together with 

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Worn brake pads**

 illuminates

› Drive to a specialist garage, exercising appropriate caution.

**Reduced braking effect**

Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

**When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work**

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

**Electric parking brake****Operation****⚠ WARNING**

Danger of key locking!

▶ The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button  must remain empty.

**Manual switch on**

› Pull the button  and hold it.

The following symbols light up.

▶  in the button.

▶  in the instrument cluster.

**Automatic switching on, after switching off the ignition**

For vehicles with manual transmission, the parking brake is automatically switched on after switching off the ignition.

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

› Tap **MENU** >  >  > Exterior.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes*.

› Select the *Brakes* menu item and activate or deactivate the function.

**Automatic shut-off**

The parking brake switches off automatically when starting up.

If automatic switch-off is to be prevented, e.g. when starting off on a slope, keep the button  pulled.

**Conditions for automatic shutting down**

✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened.

**Manual shut-down**

› With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the  button.

**Troubleshooting****Parking brake error**

 illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Parking on a steep slope**

 flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

- › Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

#### Noise when using the parking brake

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

#### The vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

- › Connect the vehicle battery to a power source, such as the battery of another vehicle.

### Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

#### Switching on



- › Pull the button (Ⓜ) and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

#### Switching off

- › Release the button (Ⓜ).

Or:

- › Depress the accelerator pedal.

## Auto Hold automatic holding function

### Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

### Functionality

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

#### Secure and release the vehicle

With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. **AUTO HOLD** is illuminated in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

#### Automatic protection from the parking brake

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. (Ⓜ) is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The engine is running or has been switched off by the START-STOP system.
- ✓ Auto Hold is activated.
- ✓ The automatic transmission **N** mode is not selected.

### Settings

#### Activation/deactivation

- › Press the (Ⓜ) button.

Activation displayed in the button by the illumination of the (Ⓜ) symbol.

#### ① NOTICE

Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

## Driver assist systems

### Braking and stabilising systems

#### Overview

##### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.



flashes - ESC is engaged

##### ESC Sport

ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style.



lit up - ESC Sport is activated

##### Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.



flashes - ASR is engaged

##### Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

##### Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)

MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. As a result, the braking effect of the engine is reduced and the wheels can turn freely again.

##### Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

##### Electronic Differential Lock (XDL+)

XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

##### Active steering assistance (DSR)

In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

##### Hill Hold Control

Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5%.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

##### Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

##### Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
- ✓ ASR activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

##### Electromechanical brake booster (electronic brake force distribution)

Electronic brake force distribution facilitates operation of the brake pedal.

After switching off the ignition, the electronic brake force distribution function is either restricted or not available.

**i** Should the vehicle be delayed by means of an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal may occur.

#### Settings

##### Deactivating/activating ASR

- ▶ Press the button under the Infotainment.

In the displayed menu in the Infotainment, the function can be deactivated or activated.

When deactivating lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations.

- ▶ Driving with snow chains.
- ▶ Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground.
- ▶ Starting up a vehicle that is stuck.

## Troubleshooting

### ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

 illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

### ABS faulty

 illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

 illuminates together with 

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Electromechanical brake booster faulty

 illuminates

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Front Assist

### Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

### Status display in the instrument cluster display

 illuminates - safety distance too small

 illuminates - warning in case of collision

### Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol  is illuminated as a warning. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

## Operating conditions

- ✓ ASR activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

## Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.

- ▶ About 30 seconds after starting. In the instrument cluster,  lights up.
- ▶ When driving around a sharp bend.
- ▶ During an ESC intervention.

## Settings

### Automatic activation

Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

### Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- › Select the *Front Assist* menu item.

### Activation / deactivation and setting in Infotainment

In the menu: **MENU** ›  › 

- 
  - ▶ *Active* - Activate/deactivate Front Assist
  - ▶ *Advance warning* - Activate/deactivate and set the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - ▶ *Display distance warning* - Activate/deactivate distance warnings
  - ▶ *Swerve support* - if the function is activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by a braking and steering intervention
  - ▶ *Oncoming vehicle braking w. turning* - when the function is activated, the system can slow down the vehicle when turning at low speeds to avoid a collision with the oncoming vehicle

### Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster

 illuminates

 Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

## Troubleshooting

### Front Assist is not available

 illuminates together with 

- › Clean the front radar sensor.

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- › Replace the defective bulb.
- › If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

- › Clean the front radar sensor.
- › If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Pedestrian detection system

### Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

**Status display in the instrument cluster display**  
 lights up - Danger of collision

**Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h**  
 The system triggers automatic braking.

**Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h**  
 The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist activated.
- ✓ Driving speed between 5-60 km/h.

## Speed limiter

### Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

**Status display in the instrument cluster display**  
 illuminates - the cruise control is activated.

When the control starts,  is highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

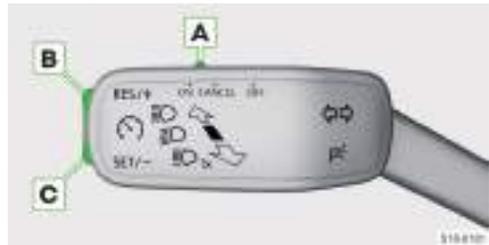
 illuminates - cruise control is active  
 flashing - the set limit is exceeded

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

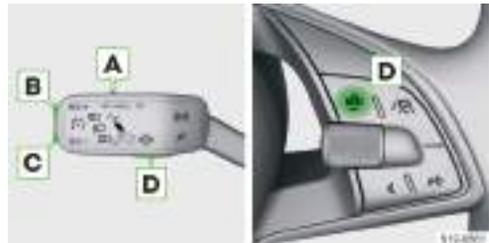
### Operation

#### Variant without cruise control



- A** ON Activate limiter (control inactive)  
 OFF Deactivate limiter  
 CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** RES/+ Resume control<sup>1)</sup> / Increase limit
- C** SET/- Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

#### Variant with cruise control



- A** ON Activate cruise control (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).  
 To enable the speed limiter, press the key **D** and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit*.  
 OFF Deactivate limiter  
 CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** RES/+ Resume control<sup>1)</sup> / Increase limit
- C** SET/- Start control with current speed / Reduce limit
- D**  Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter  
 Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

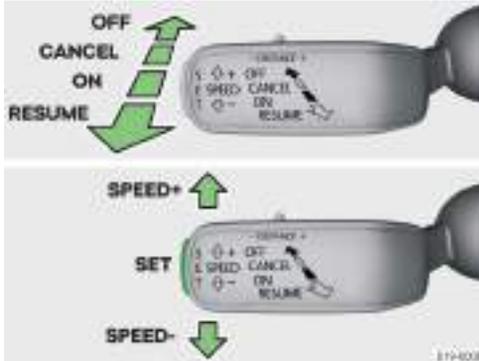
<sup>1)</sup> If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

**Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons **B** and **C****

**By pressing** in steps of 1 km/h.

**By holding** in steps of 10 km/h.

**Variant with ACC**



**ON** Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To enable the speed limiter, press the key **Ⓞ** and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit*.

**RESUME** Resume control<sup>1)</sup>/Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

**CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)

**OFF** Deactivate the limiter

**SPEED+** Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

**SPEED-** Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

**SET** Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

**Limit exceeded**

› **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

**Troubleshooting**

**Speed limiter faulty**

**LIM** illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Cruise control system**

**Functionality**

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

However, this is only done to the extent permitted by engine performance or engine braking.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

▶ Deactivate cruise control after use.

**Status display in the instrument cluster display**

**⚡** illuminated - the cruise control system is activated

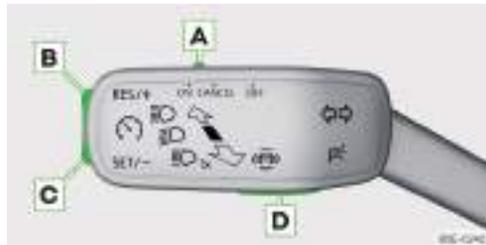
**⚡** illuminated - cruise control is active  
When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

**Operating conditions**

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

**Operation**

**Operating with the lever**



**A** **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)

**OFF** Deactivate cruise control

**CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)

**B** **RES/+** Resume cruise control<sup>2)</sup>/Increase speed

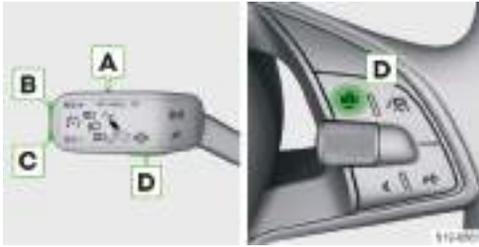
**C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

**D** **Ⓞ** Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

<sup>1)</sup> If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

<sup>2)</sup> If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

## Operating with the lever



- A** **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)  
**OFF** Deactivate cruise control  
**CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** **RES/+** Resume cruise control<sup>1)</sup>/Increase speed
- C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit
- D** **⊕** Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

### Accelerate temporarily

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

After you release the accelerator, the speed drops to the previously stored value.

### Interrupting cruise control

- ▶ After pressing the brake pedal.
- ▶ After an ESC intervention.

## Troubleshooting

### Cruise control system faulty



illuminates

- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

### Functionality

#### Control

ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

#### ⚠ WARNING

ACC does not respond to stationary objects or to crossing or oncoming objects.

**I** ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

#### Speed range

Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

#### Distance level

The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

#### Automatic stop and start

A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

- To resume control, depress the accelerator pedal or move the lever into position **RESUME**.

#### Overtaking

If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

#### Status display in the instrument cluster display



illuminates - ACC is activated



illuminates - Control is active

When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.



illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed



illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the road



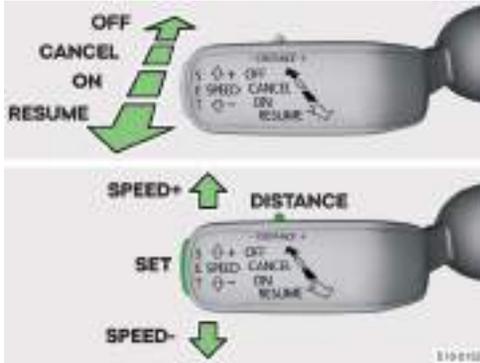
illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

- Depress the brake pedal.

<sup>1)</sup> If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

**Operation**

**Operating with the lever**



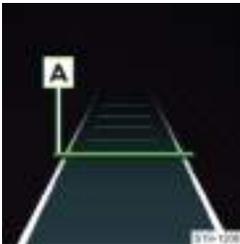
- ON** Activate ACC (control inactive)
- RESUME** Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- OFF** Deactivate ACC
- SPEED+** Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
- SPEED-** Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
- DISTANCE** Set distance level
- SET** Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

**Starting control with the current speed**

- > Tap on **SET**.
- Or:
- > If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

**Set distance level**

- > Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position - or +.



Line **A** appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.  
 > Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

**For temporary acceleration**

- > Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

**Interrupting cruise control**

- > After pressing the brake pedal.
- > By operating the clutch pedal for a long time.
- > After an ESC intervention.
- > After deactivation of the ASR.

**Resuming control**

- > If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.  
 The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

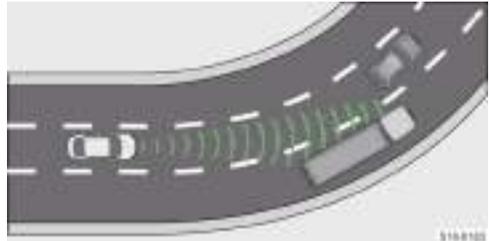
**Function restriction**

- ⚠ **WARNING**
- > Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

**Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane**

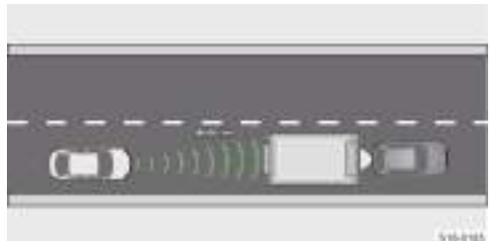
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

**When cornering**



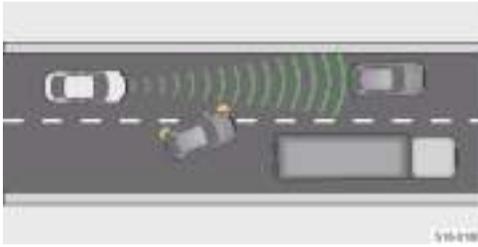
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

**Narrow or staggered vehicle**



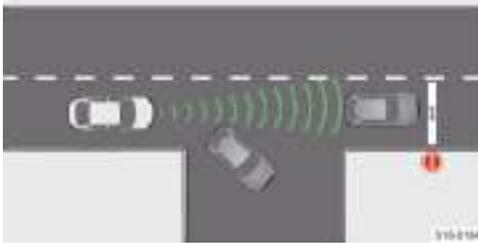
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

### Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

### Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC will not respond to the stationary vehicle.

### Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

### Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

MENU > >



- ▶ *Driving profile:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 120)
- ▶ *Last distance selected* - Switch the last selected distance level on/off
- ▶ *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front
- ▶ *Road layout preview* - switch the cruise control on/off according to the road profile (e.g. reduce speed before a bend)
- ▶ *Speed limit preview* - Switch the speed control on/off according to the permissible speed

### Troubleshooting

#### ACC not available

illuminates together with

- ▶ Stop the engine and start again.
- ▶ If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- ▶ Replace the defective bulb.
- ▶ If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Lane Assist

#### Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

#### Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

#### Status display in the instrument cluster display



lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene



lights up - System intervenes

#### Display



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

#### Warning through steering wheel vibrations

Steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations.

- ▶ The vehicle passes over a boundary line without the indicator switched on.
- ▶ The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.

- › In the event of vibrations, correct the steering movement.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

### Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ When driving around a sharp bend.
- ▶ When driving on a steep road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ When driving through construction sites.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!  
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.

- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

### Settings

#### Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

#### Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- › Select menu item *Lane Assist*.

#### Setting in Infotainment

In the menu: **MENU** ›  › 

### Troubleshooting

#### Message regarding system unavailability

- › Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
- › Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Travel Assist

### Usage

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane while controlling the speed of the vehicle.

### Functionality

Travel Assist uses the functions Lane Assist and ACC.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
- ▶ The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC are to be taken into account.

#### Adaptive lane assist

This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane.

#### Status display in the instrument cluster display

 is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control and adaptive lane guidance are active



is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control is active



is lit up – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is active



is lit up in grey – the system is deactivated

### Operating conditions

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is a max. 210 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

### Operation

#### Activation

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Control based on the current speed is started.

#### Deactivation

- › Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

- › Adjust the ACC lever to position **CANCEL** » page 130.

 Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

## Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.

- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ When driving around a sharp bend.
- ▶ When driving on a steep road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these limitations, please note ACC restrictions » page 130.

### ⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!  
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.

- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

## Troubleshooting

### Message regarding system unavailability

- › The problem solving instructions for Lane Assist » page 132 and ACC » page 131 are as follows.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Lane change assist system Side Assist

### Usage

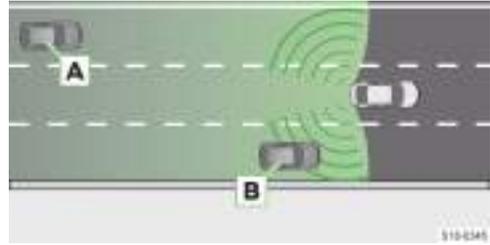
Side Assist monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

### Functionality

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the illumination of the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side where the vehicle is detected.

### Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is overtaken by vehicle [A]. The faster vehicle [A] approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle [B] is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

### Indicator light

■ **illuminates** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashing** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

### Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases.

- ▶ Driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- ▶ Driving round bends.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of another vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly.

- ▶ Unfavourable weather conditions.

- ▶ A very fast approaching vehicle.
- ▶ When going round a sharp bend or a roundabout.

## Settings

### In the instrument cluster display

The system settings are made in the display of the instrument cluster in menu item *Assist Systems*.

### In Infotainment

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu.

MENU >  > 

## Troubleshooting

### Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Traffic sign recognition

### Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

## Functionality

### Displayed road signs

- ▶ Speed limit.
- ▶ Overtaking prohibited.
- ▶ Driving bans – one-way traffic.
- ▶ Danger signs.
- ▶ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions.

### ⚠ WARNING

Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

### Towing a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

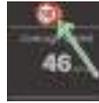
### Driving on roads without speed limits

If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs  will appear in the display.

### Example of road sign display



### Example of additional characters



Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

### Speed units

The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the  display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

## Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- ▶ The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ At high speeds.
- ▶ The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- ▶ The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- ▶ Non-current or unavailable map documents for the navigation.

## Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

MENU >  > 

### ■ Road Sign Recognition

- ▶ *Show in Instrument cluster* – Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
- ▶ *Speed warning*: – Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
- ▶ *Warning for exceeding* – Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed

### ■ Trailer recognition

- ▶ *Show road signs relevant to trailers* – Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
- ▶ *Use for route calculation* – Activation/deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation

- ▶ *Maximum speed for trailers* - Set the top speed for towing a trailer

## Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

### Usage

The Crew Protect Assist system increases occupant protection in the front seats if a collision is imminent.

### Functionality

#### The first level of protection

With a dynamic driving style, the system tightens the front seat belts on the body.

#### The second level of protection

If the system evaluates the situation as critical:

- ▶ Depending on the equipment, the hazard warning lights can be turned on.
- ▶ Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- ▶ The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
- ▶ The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

### Settings

#### Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

#### Deactivation of the first protection level

The first protection level can be deactivated as follows.

- ▶ By activating ESC Sport.
- ▶ By deactivating the ASR.
- ▶ By selecting the driving mode Sport.

### Troubleshooting

#### Crew Protect Assist faulty



illuminates together with 

Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

### Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the  lights up.

### WARNING

There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

#### Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases.

- ▶ The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off.
- ▶ The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened.
- ▶ The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes.

 In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

### Settings

#### Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu: MENU >  > 

## Emergency situation assist system Emergency Assist

### Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

### Functionality

#### When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- ▶ An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▶ If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- ▶ After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be made.

#### Interruption of automatic braking

- ▶ By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- ▶ By actively steering.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ Assist systems for emergency situations is activated.
- ✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.

### Settings

#### Activation and deactivation in Infotainment

In the menu: MENU ›  › 

## Park Assist systems

### Park Pilot parking aid

#### Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

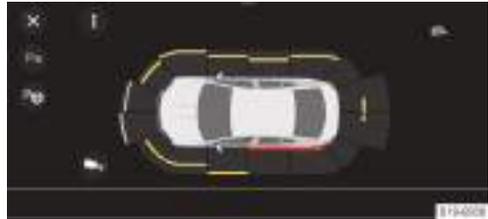
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

#### Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



 Acoustic signals on/off

 One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking

 Park Assist

 Adjustment of specific park assist systems

 System fault

 Change to the rear view camera display

 Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm

 Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm

 Obstacle outside the route

#### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

#### Turn on/turn off

##### Switching on

- › Engage reverse gear.

Or:

- › Press the **P** button.

#### Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

#### Switching off

- › Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

- › Press the **P** button.

#### Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

### Function restriction

The system might not warn of an obstacle e.g. in the following cases, or a warning may only be issued incorrectly.

- ▶ Unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ The detected obstacles are moving.
- ▶ Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- ▶ It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

### Settings

To display the system settings menu, do the following.

- › Press the **P** button below the Infotainment > **ASSIST** and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Press the **P** button below the Infotainment > : > **ASSIST** and tap the Infotainment screen.

### Troubleshooting

**After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle**

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

**After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen**

- › Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.
- › If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Rear view camera

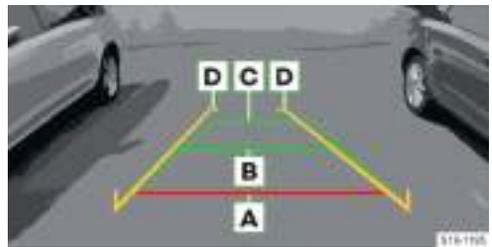
### Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

**I** The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically together with the washing of the rear window or with the aid of the functional surface **I** in the Infotainment screen.

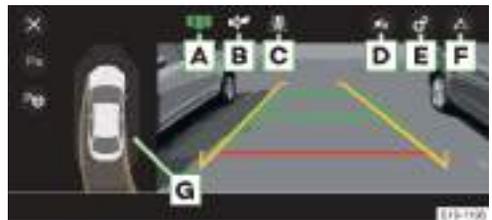
### Orientation lines and functional surfaces

#### Orientation lines



- A** Distance about 40 cm
- B** Distance about 100 cm
- C** Distance about 200 cm
- D** The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

#### Function surfaces



- A** Mode for transverse parking
- B** Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring
- C** Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- D** Switching audible parking signals on/off
- E** Setting the parking aid
- F** Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display

Functional surface for cleaning the rear view camera

**G** Parking Aid View

The full screen display of the parking aid is activated by tapping the view.

**Operating conditions**

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

**Operation**

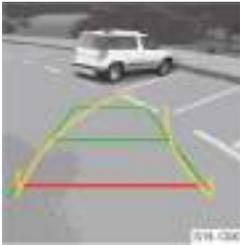
**Switch on the system**

- › Engage reverse gear.

Or:

- › Press the  button below the Infotainment › P and tap the Infotainment screen.

**Mode for transverse parking**



- › Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
- › Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.
- › At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

**Mode for driving up to a trailer**

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. The screen displays a line to be used when approaching the trailer draw bar.

**Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle**

The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

**Switch off the system**

- › Press the  button under the Infotainment.

Or:

- › Tap the functional surface × on the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › For vehicles with automatic transmission, choose mode P.

**Automatic shut-off**

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

**Restriction**

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

**Rear Traffic Alert**

**Functionality**



When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

**⚠ WARNING**

When the ESC/ASR system is deactivated, automatic braking is not performed.

**Vehicle with Parking Aid**

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



- Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!
- Approaching vehicle

**Vehicle without Parking Aid**

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

**Operating conditions**

- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

## Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

## Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following.

- › Press the  button below the Infotainment >  and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- › Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

## Troubleshooting

### Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Exit warning

### Usage

The assist system monitors the area beside and behind the vehicle up to a distance of approximately 35 m.

The assist system warns when opening the door in front of approaching objects, in order to avoid a possible collision.

## Functionality

### Situation in which a system warning occurs



### Warning in the event of an impending collision

- › The indicator light  in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will flicker and then light up.
- › A warning signal sounds.

### Warning in the event there is no immediate danger of collision

- › The indicator light  in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the vehicle was detected will light up.

## Conditions

- ✓ Stationary vehicle.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The speed of the approaching object is faster than 2 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.
- ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the assistant will remain active for about 3 minutes.

## Restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an approaching object, or the warning may be issued incorrectly.

- › Unfavourable weather conditions.
- › The field of vision of the sensors is limited by an obstacle.
- › A very fast approaching object.

## Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following.

- › Press the  button below the Infotainment >  and tap the Infotainment screen.

## Troubleshooting

### Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Park steering assistant

### Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

### What you should be mindful of

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases.

- › On unpaved or slippery surfaces.

- ▶ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- ▶ If the system chooses an inappropriate parking space for parking.

### Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display and the Infotainment screen.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

### Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

### Operation

#### Switching on

- › Press the  button below the Infotainment › Parking assist system and tap the Infotainment screen.

#### Select the lane side for the parking procedure

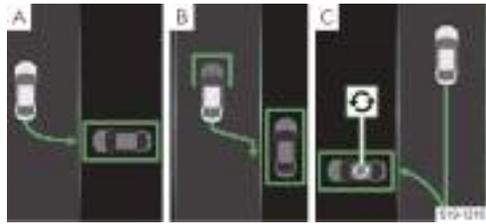
The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

- › Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

#### Operation while searching for a parking space

- › Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
- › To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.
- › To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

### Show the selected parking space



- A Park backwards crosswise
- B Park backwards longitudinally
- C Park forwards across
- ⊗ Touch the symbol - change park mode

### Switching off

- › Press the  button under the Infotainment.

Or:

- › Tap the symbol × in the Infotainment screen.

### Before the parking process

- › If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the Instrument cluster display.
- › When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

### Parking operation

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
- ▶ Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.
- › Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the Instrument cluster display.
- › As soon as the symbol  appears in the Instrument cluster display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol  goes out.
- › Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be switched off in one of the following ways at any time.

- ▶ By pressing the  button under the Infotainment.
- ▶ By tapping the symbol × in the Infotainment screen.
- ▶ Through a steering intervention.

### To complete the parking procedure using the park steering assistant



- › Partially park forward into a suitable transverse parking space.
- › Press the  button below the Infotainment › and tap *Parking assist system* on the Infotainment screen.
- › Follow the instructions on the screen.

### Exiting a parking space



- › Press the  button below the Infotainment › and tap *Parking assist system* on the Infotainment screen.

When the system is switched on, the symbol  lights up in the Infotainment screen.

- › Follow the instructions on the Instrument cluster display.

### Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

### Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the parking assistant to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

### Troubleshooting

#### Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

## Engine, exhaust system and fuel

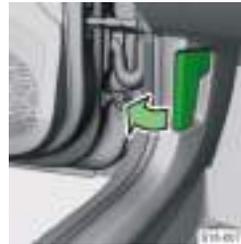
### Bonnet

#### Opening the bonnet

##### Before opening

- › Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
- › Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

##### Opening



- › Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



- › Release the lock.
- › Lift the bonnet so that the gas pressure springs hold it open.

##### Closing

- › Pull the flap down.
- › Close the flap with a slight push from a distance of about 20 cm.
- › Check that the bonnet is closed.

##### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.

### Engine oil

#### Checking the fill level and topping up

##### Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The parked engine is warm.

##### Check the level with the dipstick

- › Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
- › Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
- › Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.

- › Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



The oil level must be within the marked range.

**NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › The oil level must not be outside the marked range. If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above the marked range, do not continue driving. Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- › Do not use any oil additives.

**Check fill level in Infotainment**

- › Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

**CAR** > > Oil level

Or:

**MENU** > > > Oil level

The Infotainment displays a scale with information on the engine oil level or a note on oil level adjustment.

- › Observe the notes on oil level adjustment.
- When the engine compartment flap is opened, a scale with information on the engine oil level can be shown on the display of the instrument cluster.

**Consumption**

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

**Refilling**

- › Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
- › Top up the oil to the correct specification in 0.5 litre portions.
- › Check the oil level.
- › Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

**Specification**

Ask a specialist garage for the correct engine oil specification for your vehicle.

If no oil of the correct specification is available, **max. 0.5 l** of oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change.

- › **Petrol engines:** VW 504 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C5.
- › **Diesel engines:** VW 507 00, VW 509 00, ACEA C3 or API CJ-4. For vehicles without a particulate filter, VW 505 01 can be optionally used.

**Changing**

Have the oil changed by a specialist garage.

**Troubleshooting**

**Engine oil pressure too low**

flashes, lights up at the same time

- › Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Engine oil level too low**

illuminates together with Message regarding required engine oil top up

- › Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

**Engine oil level too high**

illuminates together with Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

- › Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

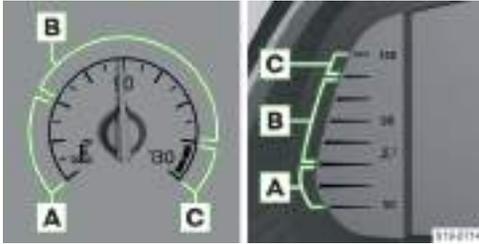
**Engine oil level sensor impaired**

illuminates together with Message regarding the engine oil sensor

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Coolant

### Coolant temperature gauge



- A** Cold area
  - › Avoid high engine speed.
- B** Operating range
- C** High temperature range

### Checking the fill level and topping up

#### Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off and cooled.

#### Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

- › If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

- ▶ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

- ▶ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
- ▶ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Refilling

##### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

- ▶ Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

- › Place a rag on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.

- › Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
- › Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

#### Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) additive for refilling.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!

Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

### Troubleshooting

#### Coolant level is too low

 illuminates together with  Message concerning the required coolant check

- › Check the coolant level.

The coolant level is OK:

- › Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 151, *Replacing a fuse*.

The fuse is OK, the indicator light comes on again:

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Coolant temperature too high

 illuminates together with  Report regarding the engine overheating

- › Stop driving.
- › Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- › Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

#### Engine fault

 illuminates together with   Stop driving!

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### There is no coolant of the correct specification available

- › Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
- › Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

- › Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

#### It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

- › Stop driving.
- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**There is a loss of coolant**

- › Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Engine electronics**

**Troubleshooting**

**Petrol engine control faulty**

**EPC** illuminates  
Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Diesel engine control faulty**

 flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Diesel preheating system faulty**

 illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Particle filter**

**Troubleshooting**

**Clogged particle filter**

 illuminates together with 

- › Clean the filter.

 When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOP function will not be available.

**Filter cleaning**

**Conditions for cleaning**

- ✓ The engine is warm.
- ✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

**Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines**

- › Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light  goes off.

If the indicator light  does not go off within 40 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines**

- › Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.
- › Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.
- › Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light  goes off.

If the indicator light  does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Exhaust control system**

**Troubleshooting**

**Emission control system faulty**

 illuminates  
Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Fuel filter**

**Troubleshooting**

**Water in the diesel fuel filter**

 illuminates together with 

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

**Radiator blinds**

**Usage**

The radiator blinds reduce polluting emissions and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and save fuel.

## Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

- › Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

## Fuel filler flap

### Opening the fuel filler flap



- › Press the flap and open it.

## AdBlue

### Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix any additives to the AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA and is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

### Functionality

In order to reduce pollutant emissions, a urea solution is automatically injected into the exhaust system - AdBlue®.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below - 11 C. System function is ensured by an automatic heating system.

### Checking the fill level and topping up

#### Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be displayed in the driv-

ing data in the instrument cluster display in the menu item  $\rho$ .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank filling level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

- › If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

#### Requirements for refilling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.

#### Methods of refilling

- ▶ With the fuel nozzle at the gas station.
- ▶ With the refill bottle or from the canister.
- ▶ At a specialist garage.

We recommend using refill bottles or canisters, refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts for refilling. The refill bottles are equipped with overflow protective function.

#### Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Top up AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue®

flows out of the refill bottle. Do not continue refilling.

- › Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.
- › Before starting the engine, leave the ignition on for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refilling.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for the injection of AdBlue® in the exhaust system!

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years. If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage. For refilling, do not use any AdBlue® which has passed its expiry date.

## Troubleshooting

### AdBlue® level too low

-  or  or  lights up  
 › Top up AdBlue®.

### AdBlue® system impaired.

-  or  or  lights up  
 › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Technical data

The AdBlue® tank capacity is approximately 12 litres.

## Petrol

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!  
 Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › Never empty the fuel tank completely!

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

## Regulations

### Standards

Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol (**E10**).

 We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

### Octane number

Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › If petrol is used that has an octane number that is lower than the one prescribed for your vehicle,

then drive at moderate speeds with minimal engine stress.

- › Fill up with the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- › Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

### Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using **95** RON petrol.

**92** or **93** RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

### Prescribed petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use min. **95** petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency** **91**, **92** or **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

### Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ

We recommend using **98** RON petrol.

**95** RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** **91**, **92** or **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

### Additive

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.
- › Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
- › If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

## Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
- ✓ Ignition switched off.

## Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
- › Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.

- › Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
- › Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.

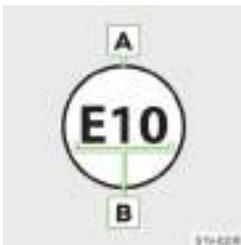
### Troubleshooting

#### If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been refuelled according to the standards applicable to your vehicle

- › Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A** Unleaded petrol
- B** Organic share as a percentage

#### Tank capacity for vehicles with front-wheel drive

- ▶ About 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on equipment), of which 6 litres are a reserve.

#### Tank capacity for vehicles with all-wheel drive

- ▶ About 55 litres, including a reserve of approx. 6 litres.



illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

## Diesel

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!

Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

#### ⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › Never empty the fuel tank completely!

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

### Regulations

#### Standards

The diesel fuel must comply with European standard EN 590 (in Russia, GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013).

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel (**B7**).

**I** We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

#### Operation in different weather conditions

Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

#### Additive

#### ⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.
- ▶ Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.
- ▶ If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

### Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
- ✓ Ignition switched off.

### Refilling

#### Misfuelling protection

The fuel filler neck on diesel vehicles may be equipped with a misfuelling protection device.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be identical to that of the petrol nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

### Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
- › Do not continue refueling after the fuel nozzle switches off.

zle switches off.

- › Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
- › Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.

### Troubleshooting

#### If a fuel other than diesel fuel has been refuelled to the appropriate standard

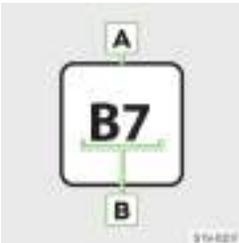
- › Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### The diesel fuel nozzle cannot be correctly inserted into the filler neck

- › If the fuel nozzle cannot be properly inserted into the fuel filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when inserting it.

### Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A** Diesel
- B** Organic share as a percentage

#### Tank capacity for vehicles with all-wheel drive

- ▶ About 55 litres, including a reserve of approx. 6 litres.



illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

#### Tank capacity for vehicles with front-wheel drive

- ▶ About 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on equipment), of which 6 litres are a reserve.

## Vehicle battery and fuses

### Vehicle battery

#### Functionality - Discharge protection

##### Possible causes of battery discharge

- ▶ Frequent short journeys.
- ▶ Low temperatures.
- ▶ Vehicle stationary for a long period of time.

##### System-related discharge protection measures

- ▶ Increasing the engine idling speed.
- ▶ Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power.

##### Measures to be taken when vehicle stationary for more than three weeks

- ▶ Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the vehicle battery.

#### Checking and charging the vehicle battery

##### Checking the condition

The battery condition is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

##### Checking the acid level

Applies to a vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



- ▶ Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
- ▶ Black colour - the acid level is OK.
- ▶ Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the battery must be replaced.

##### Requirements for the charging process

- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ Power consumers switched off.

##### Vehicle battery charging process

To charge the vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Earth point

- ▶ Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the vehicle battery.
- ▶ Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point **A**.
- ▶ Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.

- ▶ After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
- ▶ Disconnect the charger terminals from the vehicle battery.

##### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

- ▶ During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
- ▶ Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

##### ⓘ NOTICE

A flat vehicle battery can freeze easily!

#### Troubleshooting

##### Vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running



illuminates together with ⚠

- ▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

##### Engine fault



illuminates together with ⚠

- ▶ Stop driving!
- ▶ Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

##### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of fire!

- ▶ Do not mix up the connection cables.

##### Disconnecting

- ▶ Close the electric boot lid, the tilting/sliding sunroof, all windows and the electric sunblind.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
- ▶ Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

##### Connecting

- ▶ Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the warning lights are lit up ⚠⚠⚠⚠.

- ▶ If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

### Changing

The new vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

## Using the jump-starting cable

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

- ▶ Do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle under the following conditions.
  - ▶ The discharged vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.
  - ▶ The battery acid level is too low » page 149.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the charging battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

### Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury and danger of vehicle damage!

- ▶ Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot be become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

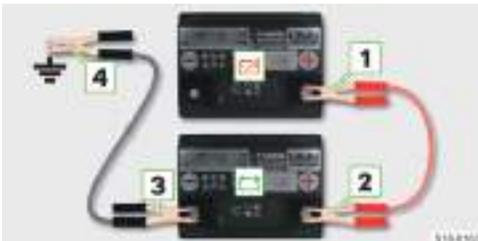
#### ⓘ NOTICE

Short circuit!

- ▶ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
- ▶ The cable connected to the positive pole of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
- ▶ The vehicles must not touch each other.

#### Connect the jump start cable

- › Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



🔌 - flat battery / 🔌 - current-emitting battery

1 ⊕ pole of the flat battery

2 ⊕ pole of the current-emitting battery

3 ⊖ pole of the current-emitting battery

4 ⚡ Earth point of the engine to be started



Earth point

#### Start the engine

- › Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle.
- › Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
- › If the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

#### Disconnecting the cable

- › Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

## Fuses

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- ▶ Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.
- ▶ Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- ▶ We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe consumer protection.
- ▶ If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

## Functionality



Blown fuse

## Conditions for replacing a fuse

- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ Driver door opened.
- ✓ All consumers switched off.

## Replacing a fuse



- > Replace the fuse with the clip located under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.
- > Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

## Fuses in the dash panel

### Overview

#### Access to fuses – left-hand drive

- > Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



- > Press the button and open the tray.
- > Change the fuse.
- > Close the storage compartment.

#### Access to fuses – right-hand drive

- > Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.



- > Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



- > Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.
- > Change the fuse.
- > Insert and lock the brake rod.
- > Close the storage compartment.

### Fuses overview



| Fuse number | Consumer                                |
|-------------|---|
| 1           | Not used                                |
| 2           | Not used                                |
| 3           | Tow hitch                               |
| 4           | SCR (AdBlue®)                           |
| 5           | Selector lever (automatic transmission) |
| 6           | Interior lighting                       |
| 7           | Heating of the front seats              |
| 8           | Tilting/sliding sunroof                 |
| 9           | Window operation - left vehicle side    |
| 10          | Not used                                |
| 11          | Tow hitch                               |

| Fuse number | Consumer  |
|-------------|---|
| 12          | Light - right side  |
| 13          | Central locking (doors and boot lid, fuel filler flap), windscreen washer system, headlight cleaning system   |
| 14          | Music amplifier   |
| 15          | Not used  |
| 16          | Airbags   |
| 17          | SCR (AdBlue®)   |
| 18          | Steering column lock, KESSY (keyless locking system)  |
| 19          | Instrument cluster, emergency call, on-line services  |
| 20          | Phonebox, USB connections   |
| 21          | Rear view camera, Top View  |
| 22          | Seat ventilation at the front   |
| 23          | Interior lighting in front, microphone, operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof  |
| 24          | All-wheel drive   |
| 25          | Belt tensioner - front left   |
| 26          | Window operation - right vehicle side   |
| 27          | Belt tensioner - front right  |
| 28          | Not used  |
| 29          | Tow hitch   |
| 30          | Infotainment  |
| 31          | Tow hitch   |
| 32          | Seat heating - rear   |
| 33          | Not used  |
| 34          | 230 volt socket   |
| 35          | Light - left side   |
| 36          | Air Conditioning  |
| 37          | Electric boot lid   |
| 38          | Not used  |
| 39          | Heated steering wheel   |
| 40          | Not used  |
| 41          | Databus   |
| 42          | Automatic transmission, gear display  |
| 43          | Front air conditioning, rear air conditioning, auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating), rear window heating  |
| 44          | Lane change assist system (Side Assist), diagnostic connection, rain and light sensor, automatic headlamp levelling, parking brake, alarm system, light switch, buttons in the centre console |
| 45          | Steering column electronics   |
| 46          | Infotainment screen, Head-up display  |
| 47          | Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)  |
| 48          | Not used  |
| 49          | Not used  |
| 50          | Not used  |
| 51          | Not used  |
| 52          | 12 volt socket in the luggage compartment   |
| 53          | Non-contact operation of boot lid   |
| 54          | Not used  |

| Fuse number | Consumer   |
|-------------|--|
| 55          | Not used   |
| 56          | Not used   |
| 57          | Not used   |
| 58          | Parking assistance, Park Assist, front radar sensor, front camera for assistance systems |
| 59          | Parking brake, air conditioning, reverse gear sensor, interior rearview mirror           |
| 60          | Diagnostic connection  |
| 61          | Clutch pedal switch, engine start  |
| 62          | USB rear, USB on interior rearview mirror  |
| 63          | Not used   |
| 64          | Not used   |
| 65          | Not used   |
| 66          | Rear window wiper  |
| 67          | Heated rear window   |

## Fuses in the engine compartment

### Overview

#### Access to the fuses



- › Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
- › Change the fuse.
- › Fit the cover and click into place.

#### ① NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- ▶ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

## Fuses overview



| Fuse number | Consumer  |
|-------------|---|
| 1           | Power steering<br>The fuse can only be changed by a specialist company! |
| 2           | ESC, engine control system, engine components                           |
| 3           | Ignition  |
| 4           | Left headlight  |
| 5           | Right headlight   |
| 6           | Alarm system  |
| 7           | Automatic gearbox   |
| 8           | Brake servo   |
| 9           | Horn  |
| 10          | Windscreen wiper  |
| 11          | Databus   |
| 12          | Automatic gearbox   |
| 13          | ESC   |
| 14          | Auxiliary heating   |
| 15          | ESC   |
| 16          | Not used  |
| 17          | Heating   |
| 18          | Heating   |
| 19          | Not used  |
| 20          | Front differential lock (VAQ)   |
| 21          | Engine control system   |
| 22          | Starter   |
| 23          | Engine control system   |
| 24          | Engine components   |
| 25          | Engine components   |
| 26          | Engine components   |
| 27          | Lambda sensors, particle filter, NOx sensor                             |
| 28          | Engine components   |
| 29          | Fuel pump   |
| 30          | Engine components   |
| 31          | Not used  |
| 32          | Heated windscreen   |
| 33          | Heating   |

## Wheels

## Tyres and rims

## What you should be mindful of

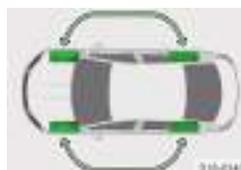
## ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- ▶ Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- ▶ Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.

## Causes of uneven tyre wear

- ▶ Improper tyre pressure.
- ▶ Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration).
- ▶ Wheel alignment error.
- ▶ Incorrect wheel balancing.

## Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

## Advice for tyre assembly

- › Follow the specified running direction, otherwise the driving characteristics may be impaired. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.
- › Always replace the tyres by the axle.

## Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

## Overview of tyre labelling

## Explanation of tyre markings

e.g. 205/60 R 16 92 H

**205** Tyre width in mm

**60** Height/width ratio in %

**R** Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial

**16** Diameter of wheel in inches

**92** Load index

**H** Speed symbol

**Load index**

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

- 88 560 kg
- 89 580 kg
- 90 600 kg
- 91 615 kg
- 92 630 kg
- 93 650 kg
- 94 670 kg
- 95 690 kg

**Speed symbol**

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

- S 180 km/h
- T 190 km/h
- U 200 km/h
- H 210 km/h
- V 240 km/h
- W 270 km/h
- Y 300 km/h

**⚠ WARNING**

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load bearing capacity and speed for the tyres fitted.

**Tyre wear indicators**



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters TWI or other symbols (e.g. Δ) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

**[i]** The tread depth can be measured using a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Do not use worn tyres.

**Tyre manufacturing date**

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 10 19 means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2019.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

**Troubleshooting**

**Help with a flat tyre**

- ▶ Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 155.
- ▶ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 156.
- ▶ Breakdown kit » page 157.

**Change of tyre pressure**

**(!)** illuminates  
 ▶ Stop the vehicle.

- › Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

**Show tyres with modified pressure**

In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

**CAR** > Tyres

Or:

**MENU** > >

**All-season or winter tires**

**Usage**

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol

**What you should be mindful of**

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

**Usage conditions**

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows.

- › In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.
- › In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

**Settings**

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

CAR >  > Exterior > Tyres

Or:

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu.

MENU >  >  > Exterior

- › By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item Tyres.
- › Select the Tyres menu item and set the speed limit.

## Snow chains

### Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

#### WARNING

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

- ▶ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

### What you should be mindful of

- › Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.
- › Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

### Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains.

| Rim size     | Tyre size  |
|--------------|------------|
| 6.5Jx16 ET46 | 205/60 R16 |
| 6.5Jx17 ET46 | 205/55 R17 |

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 9 mm.

## Spare and emergency spare wheel

### Overview

#### Spare wheel

- ▶ A full spare wheel is identical to the wheels mounted on the vehicle.
- ▶ A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

#### Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

### Remove the wheel on vehicles without sound system and replace

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.



#### Removing

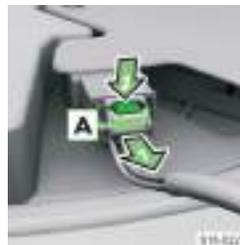
- › Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- › Unscrew the lock nut.
- › Take out the wheel.

#### Inserting

- › Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
- › Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
- › Screw in the locknut until it stops.
- › Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

### Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

#### Removing



- › Partially pull out the safety tab **A**.
- › Press the safety button and remove the plug.



- › Unscrew the lock nut.
- › Remove the bass loudspeaker.
- › Take out the wheel.

**Inserting**

- › Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
- › Insert the bass loudspeaker.
- › Screw in the locknut until it stops.
- › Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
- › Secure the safety tab **A**.

**Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle**

**What you should be mindful of**

**Before changing**

- › Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
- › Close all doors, the boot and bonnet.
- › Uncouple any trailers.

**Raise vehicle**

**⚠ WARNING**

Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

- ▶ Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- ▶ Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- ▶ Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- ▶ Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- ▶ Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

**① NOTICE**

Danger of damage to vehicle!

- ▶ Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

**After having been changed**

- › Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
- › In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.

- › Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- ▶ Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- ▶ Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

**Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle**

**Release screws**

- › If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

**⚠ WARNING**

- ▶ If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



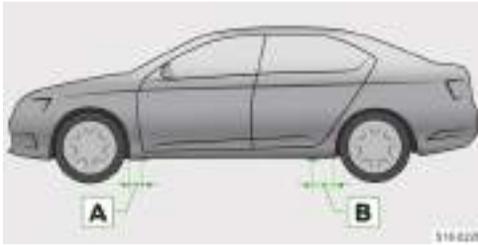
Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.

- › Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.



- › Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
- › Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

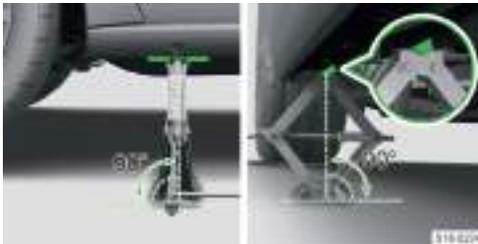
### Jacking points for the jack



- A** 18 cm
- B** 30 cm

### Position the jack and lift the vehicle

Use the jack from the tool kit.



- › Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- › Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
- › Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
- › Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

### Changing a wheel

- › Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
- › Remove the wheel carefully.
- › Attach the wheel.
- › Slightly screw in the screws.
- › Lower the vehicle.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Applies to wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories: the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

### Tighten screws

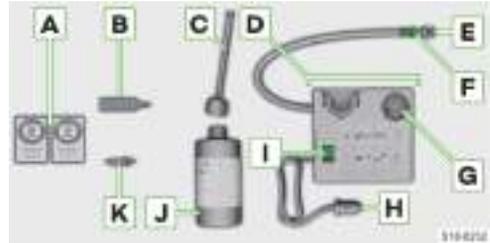
- › Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
- › Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

## Breakdown kit

### Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



- A** Sticker with speed indication
- B** Valve remover
- C** Inflation hose with plug
- D** Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
- E** Tyre inflation hose
- F** Button for pressure reduction
- G** Pressure indicator
- H** 12 volt cable connector
- I** ON and OFF switch
- J** Tyre inflation bottle
- K** Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

### Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

### Before using the kit

- › Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
- › Turn off the engine.

- › Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
- › Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- › Uncouple any trailers.

**After using the kit**

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

- › Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

- › Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

**Information for driving with repaired tyres**

- › The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
- › If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.
- › If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Danger of damage to the compressor!

- ▶ After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

- ▶ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

**Usage restrictions**

Do not use the kit in the following cases.

- ▶ The rim is damaged.
- ▶ The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
- ▶ Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
- ▶ There is damage to the tyre wall.
- ▶ The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

**Self-help**

**Seal the tyres**

- › Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
- › Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.

- › Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.
- › Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
- › Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
- › Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
- › Remove the filler plug from the valve.
- › Screw in the valve insert.

**Inflate tyres**

- › Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Start the engine.
- › Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
- › Turn on the air compressor.
- › Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

- › If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
- › Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
- › Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

**Tyre pressure**

**What you should be mindful of**

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- ▶ Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- ▶ Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
- ▶ Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. If necessary, do not reduce the elevated pressure when the tyres are warm.
- ▶ After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

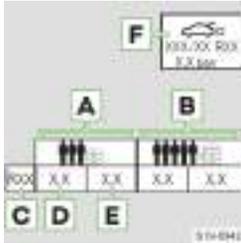
⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

**Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures**

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



**A** Inflation pressure for half load

**B** Inflation pressure for a full load

**C** Tyre diameter in inches  
This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a listing of

approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

**D** Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres

**E** Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres

**F** Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

## Tyre pressure monitor

### Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

#### Warning when pressure changes

 illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

#### Show tyres with modified pressure

In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

**MENU** ›  › 

Or:

**CAR** › Tyres

### Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- ▶ Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached.
- ▶ Sporty driving style.
- ▶ Driving on dirt roads.
- ▶ Snow chains fitted.

### Saving tyre pressure values

#### Saving tyre pressure values

- › Press the  button under the Infotainment.
- › In the displayed menu in Infotainment, tap the functional surface .
- › Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressures in the following cases.

- ▶ Change of tyre pressure.
- ▶ Change of one or more wheels.
- ▶ Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- ▶ Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year.

### Troubleshooting

#### Tyre pressure display faulty

 flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

- › Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the  symbol flashes again after starting the engine, there is a system fault.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

## Wheel bolt cover caps

### Remove cover caps and install



#### Disconnecting

- › Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
- › Remove the cover cap.

#### Installing

- › Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

## Full wheel frame

### Removing and installing the trim

Applies to factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

**Disconnecting**

- › Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
- › Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

**Installing**

- › Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

- › Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

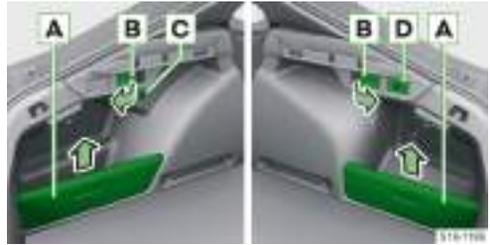
ⓘ **NOTICE**

- ▶ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

**Storage space and interior equipment**

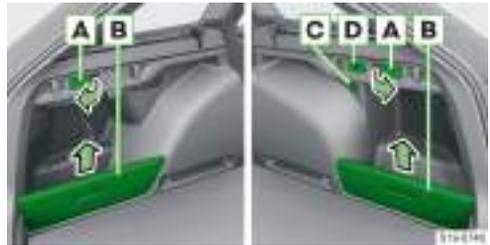
**Equipment in the boot**

**Overview**



Version 1

- A** Removable partition of the storage compartment  
Max. load 2.5 kg
- B** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- C** 12 volt socket
- D** Trailer hitch switch



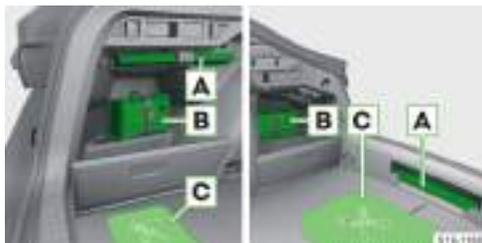
Version 2

- A** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- B** Removable partition of the storage compartment  
Max. load 2.5 kg
- C** 12 volt socket
- D** Trailer hitch switch

## Emergency equipment

### Overview of the emergency equipment

#### Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



- A** Placing of the warning triangle
- B** Placing of the first-aid kit
- C** Tool kit

#### Storage compartment for the reflective vest

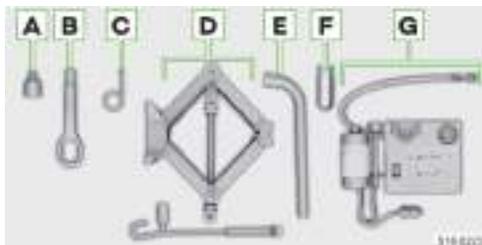
The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

#### Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat



#### Tool kit

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.

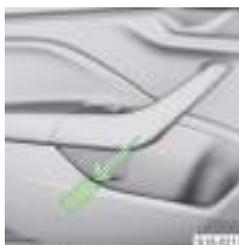


- A** Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts
- B** Towing eye
- C** Bracket for removing the full wheel covers
- D** Jack with sign and crank
- E** Wheel wrench

- F** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- G** Breakdown kit

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

### Storage compartment for the reflective vest



### Fasteners in the boot

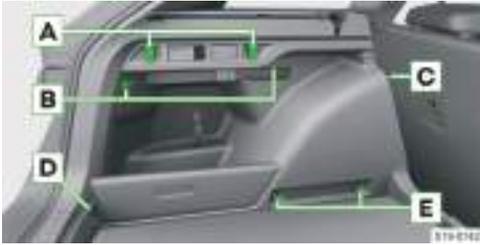
#### Overview

#### Vehicle without variable loading floor



#### Version 1

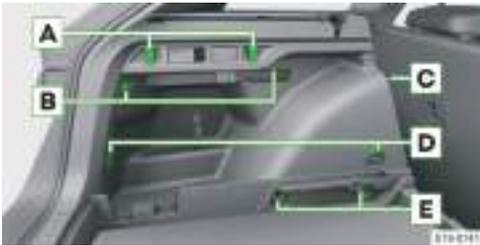
- A** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- B** Fold-out double bag hook  
Load a max. of 5 kg on each side of the double hook
- C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- D** Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg



Version 2

- A** Fold-out bag hook  
Max. load 7.5 kg
- B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- D** Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg

**Vehicle with variable loading floor**



- A** Fold-out bag hook  
Max. load 7.5 kg
- B** Hook for securing the fastening nets
- C** Fastener for securing the fastening nets
- D** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets  
Max. load 350 kg

**Other fasteners**



- A** Cargo elements  
Max. load 8 kg
- › Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.
- A storage compartment for the Cargo elements is located on the inside of the side storage compartment or under the floor covering in the boot.

side of the side storage compartment or under the floor covering in the boot.

- B** Release button for the Cargo elements

**Bag hooks in the boot**



Version 1

The maximum load on both sides of the double hook is 5 kg each.



Version 2

The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

## Storage compartment with Cargo components in the boot



The maximum load for the Cargo components is 8 kg.

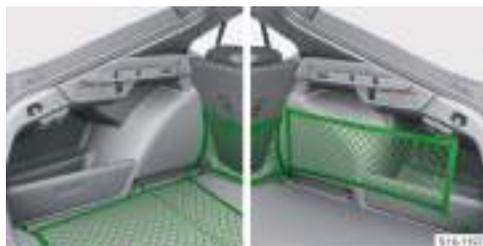
## Cargo components in the boot



The maximum load for the Cargo components is 8 kg.

## Fastening nets

### Overview



Version 1



Version 2

The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

## Multifunctional pocket

### Operation

The maximum load for the multifunctional pocket is 3 kg.

### Unfolding



Version 1

### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the rear window.

- ▶ The contents of the multifunctional pocket must not protrude beyond the top edge of the strips.



Version 2

### Folding



Version 1



Version 2

- › Separate the rear strip by turning in the direction of the arrow.

- › Place the rear strip in the wells **A**.

- › Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the boot.

- › Separate the rear strip by turning it in the direction of the arrow and place it on the hooks.

- › Remove the rear strip from the wells.

- › Place the rear strip against the front strip and fold the two strips together by turning them.

- › Remove the rear strip from the hooks.

- › Place the rear strip against the front strip and fold the two strips together by turning them.

## Removing and inserting

### Removing

- › Remove the boot cover.
- › Take out the folded pocket in an upwards direction.

### Inserting



Version 1

- › Put the end of the strip marked with **A** on the holder **B**.
- › Proceed in the same way on the left side.



Version 2

- › Insert the end of the strip marked with **R1** into the right-hand mount and the end of the strip marked with **L1** into the left-hand mount.

### Stowing the pocket under the variable loading floor

- › Remove the variable loading floor.
- Or:
- › Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.



- › Insert the pocket into the recesses of the side partitions. If the multifunction pocket and the roll-up cover are stowed at the same time, the roll-up cover at the front must cover the multifunction pocket.

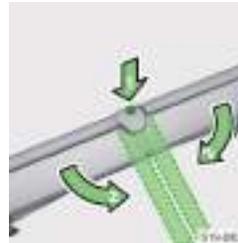
## Net partition

### Attach the net partition

#### Unfolding/folding



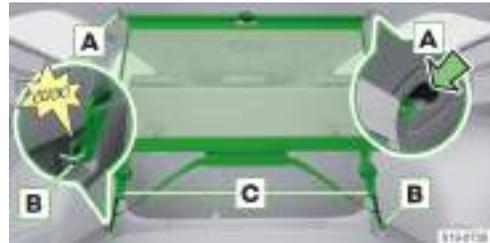
- › Open the arms of the cross bar until you hear the locking button audibly click into place.



- › Press the safety button and fold the arms of the crossbar together.

**i** The folded mesh partition can be stowed under the variable loading floor.

#### Attach at the back



- › Remove the roll-up cover or fold up the rear seat backrests.
- › First insert the crossbar into the mount **A** on one side and push it forwards.
- › Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
- › Snap the carabiners **B** into the lashing eyes.
- › Pull the straps firmly at the free ends **C**.

#### Fasten in the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind. The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

#### Releasing

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

## Double-sided floor covering

### Overview

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

### Rigid boot cover

#### Removing and inserting

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 1 kg.

##### Removing



- › Unhook the straps.



- › Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.
- › Remove the cover.

##### Inserting



- › Insert the holder **A** opposite the holder **B** on both sides of the boot.
- › Press on the cover from above until it engages.
- › Hook in the retaining straps.

#### Store the cover behind the rear seats



- › Remove the cover and place it on the floor cover in the boot.
- › Lift up the cover in the front area.
- › Push the cover up between the rear seats and the bracket **A**.

## Roll-up luggage compartment cover

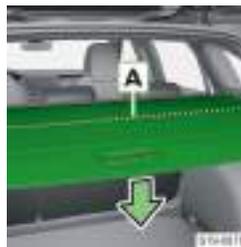
### Operation

#### Extending



- › Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

#### Retracting



- › Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up to the intermediate position **A**.

Press again to fully open the cover.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather

conditions.

### Removing and inserting

#### Take out and insert the roll-up cover



- › Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

**Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor**

- › Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

- › Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.



- › Insert the cover into the recesses of the side partitions and fold the free part forwards using the handle.

If the roll-up cover and the multifunction bag are stowed at the same time, the roll-up cover must cover the multifunction bag at the

front.



- › Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

**Fasten the raised variable loading floor in the upper position**



- › Lift the rear section of the variable loading floor.



- › Secure the raised variable loading floor to the frame of the boot lid with the hook.

**Variable loading floor in the boot**

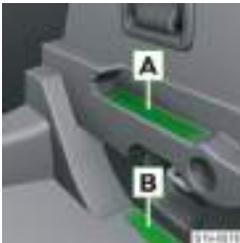
**Setting the position**

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

**Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position**



- › Lift the variable loading floor and pull it towards you so that it is lowered in the front area onto the floor covering in the boot.



- › To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area **A**.
- › To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on space **B**.

**NOTICE**

Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

**Removing and inserting**

- › Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.
- › Insertion takes place in reverse order.

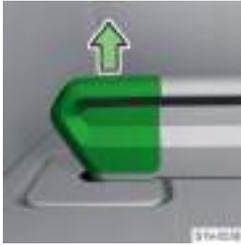
**Partition in the boot**

**Removing and inserting**

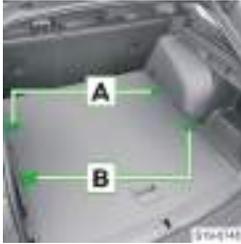
**Removing and inserting the partition**

The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.



- › To **remove**, pull the securing tabs upwards and outwards and remove the partition.



- › To **insert** engage the partition in the fixing points **A** or **B**.

#### Remove fastening element and insert

The fastening element prevents the cargo from slipping.

The fastening element is attached to the partition on the variable loading floor.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.



- › To **insert**, position the fastening element in an oblique direction on the partition and press downwards.
- › **Removing** takes place in reverse order.

#### Move the fastening element



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Moving
- 3 Applying

#### Partition with fastening element in the luggage compartment



The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.

#### Through-loading bag

##### Insert and lock

In the bag, a max. of 4 pairs of skis with poles can be transported.

- › Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards.
- › Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- › Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the poles with the tips facing to the rear into the bag and close the bag.



- › Tighten the strap A around the skis in front of the bindings.
- › Fold the seat backrest a little forward.



- › Guide the securing strap B through the opening around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- › Fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place.
- › Insert the securing strap into the lock until it clicks into place.

**⚠ WARNING**

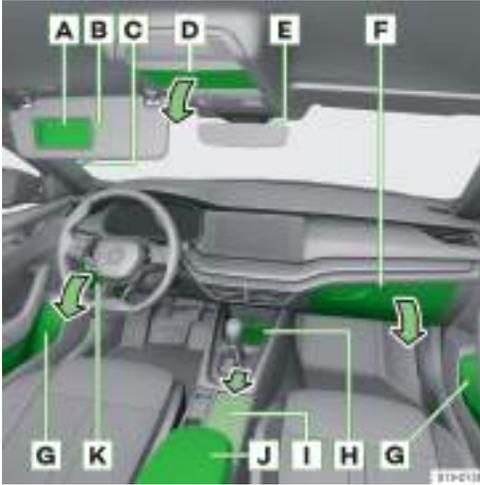
The maximum weight of the transported skis is 17 kg.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the armrest!  
▶ Handle the bag and the skis with care.

**Overview of passenger compartment**

**Overview of practical equipment in the front**



- A** Make up mirror
- B** Ticket holder
- C** Ticket holder
- D** Spectacles compartment  
Max. load 0.25 kg  
▶ To open, press the button.
- E** USB connection  
The USB connection is for charging only.
- F** Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle  
Max. load 3 kg  
In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.  
▶ Pull the handle to open the compartment.  
▶ Turn the knob to position ☆ to open the air outlet nozzle.
- G** Storage tray  
▶ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l  
▶ Storage compartment for the waste container  
▶ Storage compartment for the reflective vest
- H** Storage compartment (depending on trim level):  
▶ Phonebox  
▶ USB connections

The USB connection can be used for charging and for data transfer.

- I** Storage tray  
A drinks holder is located in the compartment.  
▶ Pull the strip to open the compartment.
- J** Openable and adjustable armrest with storage compartment  
▶ To open the compartment, lift the armrest.
- K** Storage tray  
Max. load 0.5 kg  
A card holder is located in the compartment.  
▶ Pull on the handle to open.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

▶ Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment **D**.

**Overview of the practical equipment in the rear**



- A** Coat hook  
Max. load 2 kg
- B** Storage tray  
▶ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l  
▶ Storage compartment for the reflective vest
- C** Storage pocket  
▶ Telephone pocket
- D** Depending on the equipment:  
▶ 230 volt socket and USB connection  
The USB connection is for charging only.  
▶ USB connections  
The USB connection is for charging only.  
▶ Storage tray

**⚠ WARNING**

- ▶ Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- ▶ Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

**Car park ticket holder****Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door**

The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

**Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door**

The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

**USB connections**

- A** The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.
- B** The USB connection is for charging only.



The USB connections are for charging only.

### Hook on the centre body pillar



The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

#### ⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- ▶ Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

### Glasses compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

### Pen holder





### Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



### Storage compartment under the front seat

#### Opening the storage compartment



The maximum permissible load for the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

### Storage compartment for an umbrella

#### Overview



#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

- ▶ In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- ▶ Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

### Storage compartment for hand brush

#### Overview



#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

- ▶ In the storage compartment, only insert the hand brush from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- ▶ Always push the hand brush into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

### Phonebox

#### What you should be mindful of

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging.

- ▶ The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- ▶ Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

#### Functionality

##### Functions of the Phonebox

- ▶ Wireless charging of phones.
- ▶ Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 160x80 mm into the storage compartment.

### Charging Indicator

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

The state of charge is indicated by the colour of the  $\Phi$  symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- ▶ White - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected and is charging.
- ▶ Grey - the phone is not in the storage compartment/does not support wireless charging/is fully charged.
- ▶ Red - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected, but cannot be charged.
- ▶ No icon displayed - the function is not available.

### Charging Indicator

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

The charge status is indicated by text on the Infotainment screen.

### Recommendations for optimal function

- ✓ The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- ✓ The protective cover of the phone is removed.
- ✓ The phone is centred on the phone icon on the pad.

### Operating conditions

#### Conditions for wireless charging

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

### Troubleshooting

A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol  $\Phi$  lights up in the status bar along with !.

- ▶ Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- ▶ Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

## Cup holder

### Overview

#### Cup holder at the front



A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

- ▶ Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

#### Rear cup holder



- ▶ To open it, open the lid.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

- ▶ Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

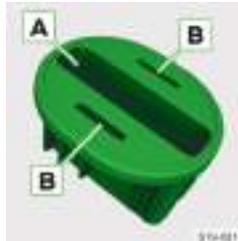
#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

## Multimedia holder

### Overview

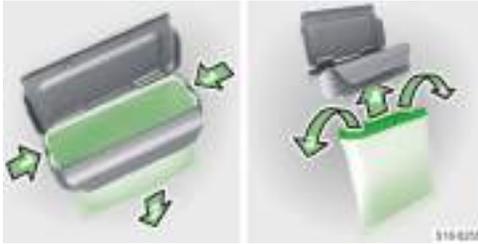
The multimedia holder is inserted in the cup holder.



- A** Storage compartment for a mobile phone
- B** Storage compartment for coins

## Waste container

### Replace bags



## Ceiling

### Remove and insert

The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations.

- ▶ On the guide rods of the front headrests.
- ▶ In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats.

## Display in rear centre console

### Overview



- A** Temperature setting
- B** Display

## Tablet holder

### Settings

#### Tilt and turn



#### Adjust size



- › Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

### Removal and Insertion

#### Fasten behind the headrests



- › Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.



- › Clip in the holder in the adapter.

**Removal**



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



› Press on the adapter and remove it.

**Insert into the rear armrest**



› Clip the holder into the opening.

**Removal**



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.

**Technical data**

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 12.2 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

**12-Volt power socket**

**Operating conditions**

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

▶ Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

▶ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

**230-Volt power socket**

**Functionality**

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

▶ Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.

▶ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

**Status display**

▶ Lit up in green - the socket is switched on.

▶ Blinking green - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

ⓘ The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

**Operating conditions**

✓ The engine is running.

ⓘ On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the socket also works in STOP mode.

**Troubleshooting**

**The indicator light flashes red**

The socket is switched off for the following reasons.

▶ Excessive current.

▶ Low state of charge of the battery.

▶ Overheating of the socket.

› If the reasons given above no longer apply and the socket is still not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected consumer from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

## Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

### Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.

The maximum load for the compartment is 3 kg.

- › Turn the knob in the compartment to position  to open the air outlet nozzle.

## Roof rack and hitch

### Roof rack

#### Overview

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.



Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points **A** and **B**.

### Swivelling hitch

#### What you should be mindful of

##### **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

##### **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- ▶ When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

##### **NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

- ▶ When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

#### Tow bar: swivel out/in

##### Swing out the tow bar



- › Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light  inside the switch illuminates.



› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

**Check latching:** the indicator light → within the switch lights up.

### Swivel tow bar

#### ① NOTICE

- ▶ No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
- ▶ A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light → inside the switch illuminates.



› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

**Check latching:** the indicator light → within the switch lights up.

### Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

#### ⚠ WARNING

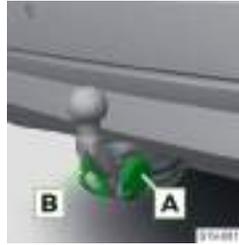
Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
- ▶ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

#### Coupling

- › Swing out the tow bar.
- › Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket **A**.

› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye **B**. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

#### Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

#### Power supply of the trailer power network

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

#### ① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!

The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed max. 350 watts.

### Troubleshooting

#### Trailer coupling error

The indicator light → inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

- › Do not use the trailer coupling.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

#### Tow bar not locked

 illuminates

- › Engage the tow bar.

### Technical data

#### Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

#### Support load with mounted accessories

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

#### ⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
- ▶ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

#### ⓘ **NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

- ▶ When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

## Maintaining and cleaning

### Service events

#### Service intervals

Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified about a due service appointment by the symbol  and the corresponding message in the instrument cluster display.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

**I** All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

#### Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

#### Displaying the due date in the Infotainment system

Select the following menu.

**CAR** >  > Menu item for the service

Or:

**MENU** >  >  > Menu item for the service

#### Display the due date in the instrument cluster display

- ▶ Select the menu in which the travel time and the travelled distance are displayed.
- ▶ Hold the button  on the multifunction steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

When the button is released, a menu is displayed.

- ▶ Select the menu item for Service in the menu.

#### Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

## Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

### ŠKODA Service Partner

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

### ŠKODA original parts

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

### ŠKODA original accessories

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

### Spoiler

#### ⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.

- ▶ The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

### Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

## Interior

### What you should be mindful of

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

### Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material

#### ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® suede seat upholstery.
- ▶ Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- ▶ Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

#### ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading to the cover fabric.

- ▶ If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

#### ⓘ

- ▶ During use, the leather and Alcantara® and suede materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration).
- ▶ Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- ▶ Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

**Plastic parts****ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damaging the dash panel.

- ▶ Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

**Windows****ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna.

- ▶ Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.
- ▶ Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

**Covers on electrically heated seats****ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damaging the heating system.

- ▶ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- ▶ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

**Seat belts****ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the seat belts.

- ▶ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- ▶ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

**Instructions for cleaning****Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / suede / material**

- ▶ Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- ▶ Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution and wipe with a dry cloth.
- ▶ Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- ▶ For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
- ▶ When looking after Alcantara®, remove stubborn hair from suede and fabric surfaces with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

**Plastic parts**

- ▶ Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

**Windows**

- ▶ Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

**Infotainment screen**

- ▶ Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

**Covers on electrically heated seats**

- ▶ Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

**Seat belts**

- ▶ Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.

**Exterior****What you should be mindful of****⚠ WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

- ▶ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- ▶ Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel, AdBlue® etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
- ▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
- ▶ Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.

- ▶ Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
- ▶ Remove any dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- ▶ Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.
- ▶ Do not polish panels.
- ▶ Door seals and window guides must not be treated with anything. Exempted from this are products that are ŠKODA Original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
- ▶ Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the reversing camera.

**Before driving through a car wash**

- ▶ Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.
- ▶ Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.

- › If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

① **NOTICE**

- ▶ Disable the Auto Hold function to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

① **NOTICE**

In vehicles with an electric boot lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

- ▶ Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

**After washing with a wax preservation**

- › Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

**Wash with a pressure washer**

① **NOTICE**

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner. This particularly applies to information with respect to the pressure and spray distance from the vehicle surface.
- ▶ Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts.
  - ▶ Foils.
  - ▶ Locks.
  - ▶ Columns on the vehicle.
  - ▶ Trailer connection.
  - ▶ Swivelling ball bar.
  - ▶ Sensors.
  - ▶ Camera lenses.
  - ▶ Plastic, chromed and anodised parts.

**Remove snow and ice**

① **NOTICE**

- ▶ Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
- ▶ Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- ▶ Only move the scraper in one direction.
- ▶ Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- ▶ Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- ▶ Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

**Instructions for cleaning**

**Handwash**

- › Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- › For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.

- › Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
- › Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

① **NOTICE**

- ▶ Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- ▶ Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
- ▶ Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
- ▶ Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- ▶ The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

**After hand washing**

- › Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

**Vehicle paint**

- › Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
- › Use a polish for matt lacquers.

**Films**

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films.

- ▶ Sun rays.
- ▶ Moisture.
- ▶ Air pollution.
- ▶ Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack.

**Protection of hollow spaces**

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

- › Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

**Underseal**

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

- › Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

**Wheels**

- › After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

① **NOTICE**

Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

### Car jack

- › If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

### Tow hitch

- › Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

## Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap



## Technical data and specifications

### Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COC Document. The information can also be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment. The values have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

### Vehicle identification data

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations.

- ▶ Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret.
- ▶ On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner.
- ▶ On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



Type plate.

- A** Vehicle manufacturers
- B** Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

#### VIN display

The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item.

**CAR** > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU ›  ›  › Menu item for the Service

**Engine number**

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

**Maximum permissible weights**

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



- A** Maximum permissible gross weight
- B** Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- C** Maximum permissible front axle load
- D** Maximum permissible rear axle load

**Maximum permissible towed weight**

The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

**Payloads**

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components.

- ▶ The weight of the rider.
- ▶ The weight of all luggage and other loads.
- ▶ The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- ▶ The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- ▶ Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 176.

**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!

- ▶ Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

**Operating weight**

**Information about the operating weight**

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

**Operating weight**

| Engine type         | Transmission      | Operating weight (kg) |               |
|---------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
|                     |                   | Octavia               | Octavia Combi |
| 1.5 l/110 kW TSI    | Manual gearbox    | 1338                  | 1360          |
| 2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR  | Manual gearbox    | 1423                  | 1445          |
| 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR | DSG <sup>a)</sup> | 1465                  | 1487          |

<sup>a)</sup> Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

**I** Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

## Vehicle dimensions

### Dimensions

| Specification                         | Value (in mm) |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
|                                       | Octavia       | Octavia Combi |
| Vehicle height                        | 1470          | 1468          |
| Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors  | 1829          | 1829          |
| Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors | 2003          | 2003          |
| Ground clearance of the vehicle       | 143           | 142           |
| Vehicle length                        | 4689          | 4689          |

### Engine specifications

▶ 2.0 I/85 kW TDI CR » [page 183](#)

▶ 2.0 I/110 kW TDI CR » [page 184](#)

### Overview

▶ 1.5 I/110 kW TSI » [page 183](#)

### 1.5 I/110 kW TSI engine

|   |                |               |
|---|----------------|---------------|
| Power (kW at rpm)                                   | 110/5000-6000  |               |
| Highest torque (Nm at rpm)                          | 250/1500-3500  |               |
| Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> ) | 4/1498         |               |
| Transmission  | Manual gearbox |               |
| Body  | Octavia        | Octavia Combi |
| Maximum speed (km/h)                                | 230            | 224           |
| With specified gear engaged                         | 6              | 5             |
| Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)                         | 8.2            | 8.3           |

### 2.0 I/85 kW TDI CR engine

|   |                |               |
|---|----------------|---------------|
| Power (kW at rpm)                                   | 85/2750-4250   |               |
| Highest torque (Nm at rpm)                          | 300/1500-2500  |               |
| Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> ) | 4/1968         |               |
| Transmission  | Manual gearbox |               |
| Body  | Octavia        | Octavia Combi |
| Maximum speed (km/h)                                | 211            | 205           |
| With specified gear engaged                         | 6              | 6             |
| Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)                         | 10.3           | 10.4          |

## 2.0 I/110 kW TDI CR engine

|   |                   |               |
|---|-------------------|---------------|
| Power (kW at rpm)                                   | 110/3000-4200     |               |
| Highest torque (Nm at rpm)                          | 340/1700-2750     |               |
| Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> ) | 4/1968            |               |
| Transmission  | DSG <sup>a)</sup> |               |
| Body  | Octavia           | Octavia Combi |
| Maximum speed (km/h)                                | 227               | 222           |
| With specified gear engaged                         | 7                 | 7             |
| Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)                         | 8.7               | 8.8           |
| <sup>a)</sup> Automatic dual-clutch transmission.   |                   |               |

### Event Data Recorder

The vehicle is equipped with a device that serves as an accident data recorder (referred to solely as “EDR” from this point). The main purpose of the EDR is data recording during a traffic accident or other exceptional traffic conditions (referred to solely as “accident” from this point), where the restraint systems are activated.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- ▶ The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- ▶ The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- ▶ The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- ▶ The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data helps with the analysis of how the vehicle systems were behaving shortly before, during and shortly after the accident, thereby ensuring better information regarding the circumstances under which the accident occurred, which lead to material damage and possibly to personal injury.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is then also recorded. In addition to the information on whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the relevant time, whether these were only partially available or were inactive, there is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or braked the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g.:

- ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- ▶ Lane Assist.
- ▶ Park Assist.
- ▶ Emergency brake function (Front Assist).

EDR data is only recorded if an accident causes the restraint systems to be activated. Under normal driving conditions there is no data recording and there is no audio or video recording of the vehicle interior or

the vehicle environment. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is also not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

Reading out the EDR requires special equipment with specific access authorization and a legally prescribed diagnostic connection in the vehicle (“on-board diagnostics”), and the ignition will need to be switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

### Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

- ▶ <https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data>



## Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53 / EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.



To display information about **Directive 2014/53 / EU** on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical regulation on radio equipment, approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of May 25, 2017 No. 355** as well as regarding **declaration of conformity**, proceed as follows.

1. Import the QR code or enter the following address in the web browser.  
<http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>
2. Click on "Choose your manual".
3. Select the desired model - a menu with the instructions will be displayed.
4. Select the construction period and the language.
5. Choose the **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU** or **Information on the Technical Regulations on Radio Systems No. 355** file in PDF format.

## Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

### Rights arising from defective performance

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the "Vehicle delivery documentation" chapter in this Owner's Manual.

### ŠKODA warranty for new cars

As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the "ŠKODA Warranty,") according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services<sup>1)</sup>.

- ▶ Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.
- ▶ Free repair of the high-voltage battery if it is installed in the vehicle and if the damage occurs within 8 years or before reaching a mileage of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty. A reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery over time is a natural feature of technology and does not constitute a defect within the meaning of the ŠKODA warranty, provided that this value does not fall below 70% of the total usable capacity before the expiry of 8 years or before the achievement of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever comes first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner<sup>2)</sup>.

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

<sup>1)</sup> Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

<sup>2)</sup> Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific legal regulations, the date of the first registration can be specified instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

Vehicle repairs under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

In the event of a claim under the ŠKODA warranty regarding damage to the high-voltage battery, if it is installed in the vehicle, the high-voltage battery is put into a condition corresponding to the age and mileage of the vehicle, whereby the capacity of the high-voltage battery after repair is at least 70% of the total usable capacity.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances.

- ▶ The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- ▶ Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- ▶ Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorized modifications to your vehicle.
- ▶ Non-observance of instructions in the Owner's Manual or in other factory instructions, including, but not limited to, non-observance of instructions regarding the procedure for charging the high-voltage battery if it is installed in the vehicle.
- ▶ Use of the vehicle as a stationary source of electrical energy.
- ▶ External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, etc.).
- ▶ Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

### ŠKODA Mobility Warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

As part of the Mobility Warranty, if your car breaks down as a result of an unexpected fault when you are on the move, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

### Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The vehicle repair under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of with-

drawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The described paint warranty, the warranty against rust penetration and the warranty for the high-voltage battery remain unaffected by the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

**I** The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

## Index

### A

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>ABS</b>                                     | 125 |
| <b>ACC</b>                                     | 129 |
| Automatic stop and start                       | 129 |
| Distance adjustment                            | 130 |
| Interruption of cruise control                 | 130 |
| <b>Accident data recorder</b>                  | 184 |
| <b>Adaptive Cruise Control</b>                 | 129 |
| <b>Adaptive suspension</b>                     | 120 |
| <b>AdBlue</b>                                  |     |
| Check  | 145 |
| functionality                                  | 145 |
| Indicator light                                | 146 |
| Refilling                                      | 145 |
| Safety   | 18  |
| standard                                       | 145 |
| tank capacity                                  | 146 |
| <b>Air conditioning</b>                        |     |
| see Manual air conditioning                    | 56  |
| <b>Air Conditioning</b>                        |     |
| Display in the centre console at the back      | 173 |
| <b>Air conditioning system</b>                 |     |
| see Climatronic                                | 57  |
| <b>Airbag</b>                                  | 46  |
| Deployment                                     | 46  |
| Fault  | 47  |
| Installation locations                         | 46  |
| Safety   | 19  |
| Switching off front passenger airbag           | 47  |
| Turn off airbags                               | 46  |
| <b>Alarm system</b>                            | 26  |
| Trailer  | 27  |
| <b>All-season tyres</b>                        | 154 |
| <b>Ambient lighting</b>                        | 53  |
| <b>Android Auto</b>                            |     |
| see digital version of the manual              | 5   |
| <b>Android Auto - Infotainment Columbus</b>    | 100 |
| <b>Android Auto - Infotainment Swing</b>       | 78  |
| <b>Apple CarPlay</b>                           |     |
| see digital version of the manual              | 5   |
| <b>Apple CarPlay - Infotainment Columbus</b>   | 100 |
| <b>Apple CarPlay - Infotainment Swing</b>      | 78  |
| <b>Armrest</b>                                 |     |
| Front  | 37  |
| Rear   | 37  |
| <b>ASR</b>                                     | 125 |
| <b>Assist systems</b>                          |     |
| Driver assist                                  | 125 |
| Park Assist                                    | 136 |
| <b>Assist systems for emergency situations</b> | 135 |
| <b>Assistance systems</b>                      |     |
| Safety   | 20  |
| <b>Auto Hold</b>                               | 124 |
| <b>Automatic braking</b>                       |     |
| see Front Assist                               | 126 |
| <b>Automatic gearbox</b>                       | 118 |

manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 119

### Automatic headlights system

Setting 50

### Automatic operation of the Climatronic 58

### Auxiliary heating and ventilation 60

Change the battery in the remote control 61

Troubleshooting 61

### B

#### Battery

see vehicle battery 149

#### Battery acid 149

#### Blinker

see flashing light 49

#### Bluetooth

see digital version of the manual 5

#### Bonnet 141

#### Boot 160

12 volt socket 160

Double-sided floor covering 165

Fasteners 161

Fastening nets 163

Hitch switch 160

Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests

160

Multifunctional pocket 163

Net partition 164

Rigid cover 165

roll-up cover 165

Storage compartments 160

Transporting objects safely 20

Variable loading floor 166

#### Boot cover 165

#### Boot lid 32

Automatic locking 32

Contactless operation 33

manual operation 32

Manually unlock 34

to be set to the highest position 33

#### Boot Lid

Troubleshooting 33

#### Boot storage

see boot lid 32

#### Brake fluid 122

Safety 18

#### Brake pads 123

#### Brakes 122, 123

#### Breakdown call 110

### C

#### Car adaptations

Recommendations 178

#### Cargo elements 161

#### Ceiling 173

#### Central locking 24

#### Central locking button 24

#### Central locking system

- SAFE function..... 24
  - Centre console**..... 10
  - Changing gear with a**
    - manual gearbox..... 118
  - Charging your phone wirelessly**..... 171
  - Check the vehicle before your journey**..... 18
  - Child lock**..... 28
  - Child seat**..... 42
    - Fastening using a belt..... 45
    - Grouping..... 43
    - i-Size..... 44
    - Installation..... 45
    - ISOFIX..... 44, 45
    - Keyword child seat..... 42
    - On the passenger seat..... 43
    - Recommended child seats..... 43
    - Safety instructions..... 42
    - Securing children properly..... 19
    - TOP TETHER..... 45
  - Cleaning the vehicle**
    - Outside..... 180
  - Climatronic**..... 57
    - Set classic air conditioning..... 58
    - set smart air conditioning..... 58
    - Start the operating menu..... 58
  - COMING HOME**..... 51
    - Operating conditions..... 51
    - Setting..... 51
  - Compartments**..... 168
  - Control centre - Infotainment Columbus**..... 86
  - Control centre - Infotainment Swing**..... 68
  - Convenience signalling**..... 49
    - Setting..... 50
  - Coolant**..... 143
    - Checking..... 143
    - Indicator light..... 143
    - Refilling..... 143
    - Safety..... 18
    - Specification..... 143
    - Temperature gauge..... 143
    - Troubleshooting..... 143, 144
  - Crew Protect Assist**
    - see Proactive occupant protection..... 135
  - Cruise control**..... 128
  - Cup holder**..... 172
  - Cybernetic Security - Infotainment Columbus**..... 94
  - Cybernetic security - Infotainment Swing**..... 74
- D**
- Data connection - Infotainment Columbus**..... 100
  - Daylight running lights**..... 48
  - DCC**..... 120
  - Deactivating the front passenger airbag**..... 47
  - Diesel**..... 147
    - Misfuelling protection..... 147
    - Prescribed fuel..... 148
    - Refilling..... 148
    - Requirements for refuelling..... 147
  - Standards..... 147
  - Tank capacity..... 148
  - Troubleshooting..... 148
  - Digital**
    - instrument cluster..... 62
  - Digital Assistant Laura**..... 84
  - Digital instrument cluster**..... 62
  - Distribution of the cargo**..... 120
  - Door**
    - Opening/closing..... 28
  - Drive assistant**
    - see Travel Assist..... 132
  - Driver Alert**..... 135
    - fatigue detection assistant..... 135
  - Driver's seat**..... 10
  - Driving data**..... 63, 64
  - Driving in neutral**..... 118
  - Driving with trailer**
    - Safety..... 20
    - Trailer Stability Assist..... 125
  - DSR**..... 125
  - Dynamic cornering light**..... 50
    - Full LED headlights function..... 48
  - Dynamic Light Assist**
    - see Headlight Assist System..... 51
- E**
- Earth point**..... 150
  - Economical driving style**..... 120
  - EDL**..... 125
  - Electric parking brake**..... 123
  - Electric windows**..... 29
    - Activation..... 29
    - Force limiter..... 28
    - Operation..... 29
    - Troubleshooting..... 29
  - Electronic brake force distribution**..... 125
  - Emergency**
    - Emergency call..... 21
    - Using jump start cables..... 150
    - What to do after an accident..... 22
    - What to do in the event of a fire..... 22
  - Emergency Assist**
    - see assist systems for emergency situations..... 135
  - Emergency call**..... 21
  - Emergency equipment**..... 161
    - Jack..... 161
    - Tool kit..... 161
  - Emergency wheel**..... 155
    - Safe driving..... 20
  - Engine compartment**..... 11
    - Bonnet..... 141
    - Coolant..... 143
    - Engine oil..... 141
    - Safety..... 18
    - Vehicle battery..... 149
    - Windscreen washer fluid..... 54
  - Engine number**..... 181

- Engine oil** ..... 141
    - Changing ..... 142
    - Check in Infotainment ..... 142
    - check with the dipstick ..... 141
    - Indicator light ..... 142
    - Refilling ..... 142
    - Safety ..... 18
    - Specification ..... 142
  - Engine start**
    - Using jump start cables ..... 150
  - EPC** ..... 144
  - Equipment in the boot** ..... 160
  - ESC** ..... 125
  - ESC Sport** ..... 125
  - Exhaust control system** ..... 144
  - Exit warning** ..... 139
    - Operating conditions ..... 139
  - Explanations** ..... 6
  - Exterior**
    - lighting ..... 48
  - Exterior mirror** ..... 40
  - Exterior mirrors**
    - Operation ..... 40
  - Extinguisher** ..... 161
- F**
- Fasteners in the boot** ..... 161
  - First aid kit** ..... 161
  - Flooring in the boot** ..... 165
  - Fog light**
    - Rear ..... 49
  - Fog lights** ..... 49
    - Front ..... 49
  - Fogged windows** ..... 57, 59
  - Free-wheeling**
    - See Driving in neutral ..... 118
  - Front Assist** ..... 126
    - distance warning system ..... 126
  - Front seat**
    - Electrically operated ..... 35
    - Manually operated ..... 34
  - Front vehicle area** ..... 7
  - Fuel**
    - Diesel ..... 147
    - Petrol ..... 146
  - Fuel filler flap** ..... 145
  - Fuel filter** ..... 144
  - Fuel tank**
    - Opening the flap ..... 145
  - Full LED headlights** ..... 48
  - Fuses** ..... 151
    - In the dash panel ..... 151
    - In the engine compartment ..... 152
    - Replacing ..... 151
- H**
- Hand brush** ..... 171
  - Hazard warning light system** ..... 49
  - Head-Up display** ..... 64
  - Headlight Assist System** ..... 51, 52
    - Activation and deactivation in Infotainment ..... 52
  - Headlights**
    - Full LED ..... 48
    - Full LED setting ..... 50
    - Headlight range control ..... 50
  - Headrests** ..... 37
  - Heated windscreen** ..... 31
  - HHC**
    - see Hill Hold Control ..... 125
  - High beam**
    - Headlight Assist System ..... 51
  - High-beam**
    - High-beam assist system ..... 51
  - High-beam assist system** ..... 51
  - Hill Hold Control** ..... 125
  - Hook**
    - In the interior ..... 168
  - Hooks**
    - in the boot ..... 161
  - Hotspot**
    - see digital version of the manual ..... 5
- I**
- i-Size** ..... 44
  - Ice scraper** ..... 9
  - Immobilizer** ..... 117
  - In the event of an accident**
    - What to do after an accident ..... 22
  - Indicator lights**
    - Foreword ..... 11
    - Overview ..... 11, 14
  - Information call** ..... 110
  - Infotainment Columbus** ..... 81, 82
    - Basic settings ..... 81
    - Keypad ..... 83
  - Infotainment keyboard**
    - see digital version of the manual ..... 5
  - Infotainment keypad Columbus**
    - Overview ..... 83
  - Infotainment screen Columbus**
    - Overview ..... 82
  - Infotainment Swing** ..... 65, 66
  - Interior**
    - lighting ..... 52
  - Interior lighting** ..... 52
    - Ambient lighting ..... 53
    - Operation ..... 52
  - Interior rear-view mirror** ..... 40
  - ISOFIX** ..... 45
    - eyelets ..... 45
    - Use of child seats ..... 44
- J**
- Jump start cables** ..... 150
  - Jump-starting** ..... 150

**K**

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| <b>Key</b> .....                                | 23     |
| Memory function of the key.....                 | 24     |
| Remove the key bit.....                         | 23     |
| <b>Key switch for airbag deactivation</b> ..... | 47     |
| <b>Key switch for passenger front airbag</b>    |        |
| Key switch faulty.....                          | 47     |
| <b>Keyless locking (KESSY)</b> .....            | 26     |
| <b>Keypad - Infotainment Columbus</b> .....     | 84     |
| <b>Keypad - Infotainment Swing</b> .....        | 68     |
| <b>Keypad Infotainment Columbus</b> .....       | 84     |
| <b>Keypad Infotainment Swing</b> .....          | 67, 68 |
| <b>Kick-down</b> .....                          | 118    |

**L**

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| <b>Lane Assist</b> .....                          | 131    |
| see Lane Assist.....                              | 131    |
| <b>Lane change assist system</b>                  |        |
| siehe Side Assist.....                            | 133    |
| <b>Launch control</b> .....                       | 119    |
| <b>LEAVING HOME</b> .....                         | 51     |
| Operating conditions.....                         | 51     |
| Setting.....                                      | 51     |
| <b>Lever</b>                                      |        |
| Headlight Assist System.....                      | 52     |
| High beam.....                                    | 49     |
| High-beam assist.....                             | 51     |
| Turn signal.....                                  | 49     |
| Windscreen wiper and washer.....                  | 54     |
| <b>Liability for defects</b>                      |        |
| see warranty.....                                 | 185    |
| <b>Light</b> .....                                | 48     |
| Clean headlights.....                             | 54     |
| CORNER function.....                              | 48     |
| Daytime running lights.....                       | 48     |
| Driving in the opposite direction of traffic..... | 50     |
| Fog light.....                                    | 49     |
| Full LED headlights.....                          | 48     |
| Hazard warning lights.....                        | 49     |
| Headlight Assist System.....                      | 51     |
| Headlight range control of the headlights.....    | 50     |
| High beam.....                                    | 49     |
| High-beam assist system.....                      | 51     |
| Indicator light.....                              | 50     |
| Low beam.....                                     | 48, 50 |
| Operation.....                                    | 48     |
| Parking light.....                                | 49     |
| Sidelights.....                                   | 49     |
| Switching on and off automatically.....           | 48, 50 |
| Troubleshooting.....                              | 51     |
| Turn signal.....                                  | 49     |
| <b>Light Assist</b>                               |        |
| see high beam assist system.....                  | 51     |
| <b>Light switch</b> .....                         | 48     |
| <b>Lighting</b>                                   |        |
| Ambient lighting.....                             | 53     |
| exterior.....                                     | 48     |
| <b>Lighting range</b> .....                       | 50     |

**Limiters**

|  |        |
|--|--------|
| see speed limiter.....                 | 127    |
| <b>List of radio stations</b>          |        |
| see digital version of the manual..... | 5      |
| <b>Load-through bag</b> .....          | 167    |
| <b>Load-through device</b> .....       | 38     |
| <b>Locking</b> .....                   | 24, 26 |
| <b>Low beam</b> .....                  | 48, 50 |

**M**

|   |        |
|---|--------|
| <b>Main beam</b> .....  | 49     |
| <b>Management of online services</b> .....                    | 113    |
| <b>Manual air conditioning</b>                                |        |
| Settings.....   | 56     |
| Start the operating menu.....                                 | 56     |
| <b>Manual gearbox</b> .....                                   | 118    |
| <b>MATRIX headlights</b>                                      |        |
| see Headlight Assist System.....                              | 51     |
| <b>MCB</b> .....  | 125    |
| <b>Media</b>  |        |
| see digital version of the manual.....                        | 5      |
| Traffic.....  | 72     |
| <b>Media - Infotainment Columbus</b> .....                    | 90–92  |
| what you should be mindful of.....                            | 90     |
| <b>Media - Infotainment Swing</b> .....                       | 71, 72 |
| what you should be mindful of.....                            | 71     |
| <b>Memory function of the key</b> .....                       | 24     |
| <b>Memory function of the seat</b> .....                      | 35     |
| <b>Mirror</b>   |        |
| see exterior mirror.....                                      | 40     |
| <b>MirrorLink</b>   |        |
| see digital version of the manual.....                        | 5      |
| <b>MirrorLink - Infotainment Columbus</b> .....               | 100    |
| <b>MirrorLink - Infotainment Swing</b> .....                  | 78     |
| <b>Mirrors</b>  |        |
| Fault.....  | 41     |
| see interior rear-view mirror.....                            | 40     |
| Set functions.....  | 40     |
| <b>Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Columbus</b> ..... | 94, 95 |
| Applications in mobile devices.....                           | 94     |
| Mobile device Bluetooth compatibility.....                    | 94     |
| Mobile device compatibility.....                              | 94     |
| <b>Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Swing</b> .....    | 74, 75 |
| <b>MSR</b> .....  | 125    |
| <b>Multi-Collision Brake</b>                                  |        |
| see MCB.....  | 125    |
| <b>Multifunctional pocket</b> .....                           | 163    |
| <b>Multimedia holder</b> .....                                | 172    |

**N**

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| <b>Navigation - Infotainment Columbus</b> ..... | 103, 106, 107 |
| <b>Net partition</b> .....                      | 164           |
| <b>Nets</b> .....                               | 163           |
| <b>Notes on starting</b> .....                  | 116           |

## O

## Oil

see engine oil 141

## Online services

Breakdown call 110  
 Information call 110  
 Management of online services 113  
 Remote access to the vehicle 115  
 Service schedules 115  
 Shop 114  
 ŠKODA Connect 108  
 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA

Connect services 108

Vehicle status report 115

Operation - Infotainment Columbus 83

Operation - Infotainment Swing 66

## P

Park Assist 140

Troubleshooting 141

Park Assist systems 136

## Parking

Parking aid 136

Parking the vehicle safely 21

Rear Traffic Alert 138

Reversing camera 137

Parking aid 136, 137

## Parking Aid

Troubleshooting 137

Parking brake 123

see electric parking brake 123

Parking light 49

## ParkPilot

see parking aid 136

Partition in the boot 166

Passenger seat 10

Pedestrian Detection 127

Personal data 109, 184

Petrol 146

Prescribed fuel 147

Prescribed petrol 146

Refilling 146

Requirements for refuelling 146

standards 146

Tank capacity 147

Troubleshooting 147

Phonebox 171

Power assisted steering 39

Practical equipment 168

12 volt socket 160, 168, 174

230 volt socket 168, 174

Coat hook 168

cup holder 172

Load-through bag 167

Make up mirror 168

Multimedia holder 172

Spectacles compartment 168

Storage compartment for the hand brush 171

Storage compartment for the umbrella 171

Storage compartment under the front seat 171

Storage compartments 168

Storage pockets 168

Tablet holder 173

Ticket holder 168

## R

Radiator blinds 144

## Radio

see digital version of the manual 5

Radio - Infotainment Columbus 86, 88

Radio - Infotainment Swing 68-70

Restriction 69

Rear fog light 49

## Rear seats

Folding down 36

Rear Traffic Alert 138

Rear vehicle area 9

## Rear View Camera

Operation 138

Recirculated air mode 56, 58

## Refilling

AdBlue 145

Coolant 143

Diesel 148

Engine oil 142

Petrol 146

## Reflective vest

161

Remote access to the vehicle 115

## Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilation

Change the battery 61

Reversing camera 137

## Rights arising from defective performance

see warranty 185

Roll-up boot cover 165

Roof rack 175

Attaching the carrier 175

Roof load 175

Safe driving 20

## S

Safe driving 20

## SAFE function

Description 24

Turn off 24

## Safety

Airbag 19

Assistance systems 20

Before the journey 17

Belt webbing arrangement 19

Car adaptations 17

Child seat 19

Correct seating position 18

Driving through water 21

Driving with a trailer 20

Emergency call 21

Engine compartment 18

- Exiting the vehicle..... 21
  - Indicator lights..... 20
  - New brake pads..... 17
  - New tyres..... 17
  - Operating fluids..... 18
  - Parking..... 21
  - Roof rack..... 20
  - Running in the engine..... 17
  - safe driving..... 20
  - Sensors and cameras..... 17
  - Sockets..... 18
  - Spare and emergency wheel..... 20
  - Transporting cargo..... 20
  - Transporting children..... 19
  - Transporting objects..... 20
  - Vehicle battery..... 18
  - weather conditions..... 21
  - What to do after an accident..... 22
  - What to do in the event of a fire..... 22
  - Screen - Infotainment Columbus**..... 83
  - Screen - Infotainment Swing**..... 66, 67
  - Seat belts**..... 41
    - Adjusting the height..... 42
    - Automatic belt retractor..... 41
    - Belt tensioners..... 41
    - Blocked strap..... 42
    - Correct arrangement..... 19
    - Fastening and unfastening..... 42
    - Reversible belt tensioner..... 41
    - status display..... 41
  - Seat heating**..... 38
  - Seat massage function**..... 36
  - Seat ventilation**..... 38
  - Seatback**
    - Load-through device..... 38
  - Seats**..... 34
    - Folding down..... 36
    - Heating..... 38
    - ISOFIX..... 45
    - Memory function of the seat..... 35
    - Sitting safely..... 18
    - TOP TETHER..... 45
    - Ventilation..... 38
  - Self-help - Infotainment Swing**..... 66
  - Service event**
    - Interval..... 177
    - Proof..... 177
    - Reset information..... 177
    - Show appointment..... 177
  - Service position for windscreen wiper arms**..... 55
  - Service schedules**..... 115
  - Service work**..... 178
  - Set tyre pressure values**..... 159
  - Setting personal data protection**..... 109
  - Settings - Infotainment Swing**..... 65
  - Shop**..... 114
  - Side Assist**..... 133
  - Sidelights**
    - see Parking light..... 49
  - Sliding/tilting sunroof**
    - electric operation of the sun blinds..... 30
  - SmartLink**
    - see digital version of the manual..... 5
  - SmartLink - Infotainment Columbus**..... 100–102
  - SmartLink - Infotainment Swing**..... 78–80
    - Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection..... 80
    - Restrictions while driving..... 80
  - Snow chains**..... 155
  - Sockets**
    - 12-volt socket..... 174
    - 230-volt socket..... 174
    - Safety..... 18
  - Spare wheel**..... 155
    - Safe driving..... 20
  - Speed limiter**..... 127
    - Indicator light..... 127
  - Start**..... 116
  - START STOP**..... 117
  - Starter button**..... 116
  - Steering column lock**..... 39
  - Steering wheel**..... 38
    - Correct position..... 19
    - Dials/buttons..... 62
    - heating..... 39
    - manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel..... 119
  - Steering wheel heating**..... 39
  - Stopping the engine**..... 116
  - Storage**..... 168
  - Sun protection**..... 31
    - electric operation of the sun blinds..... 30
    - Operation of the rear sun protection roller blind..... 31
    - Operation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows..... 31
  - Supported media files**
    - see digital version of the manual..... 5
  - Switching low beam on automatically**..... 48
  - System update - Infotainment Swing**..... 66
- ## T
- Tablet holder**..... 173
  - Tank capacity**
    - Diesel..... 148
    - Petrol..... 147
  - Technical data**..... 181
  - Technical specifications**
    - Dimensions..... 183
    - engine specifications..... 183
  - Telephone - Infotainment Columbus**..... 95–97
  - Telephone - Infotainment Swing**..... 76, 77
  - Tilting/sliding sunroof**..... 30
    - Operation..... 30
  - Tips for economical driving**..... 120
  - Tiptronic**..... 119
  - Tool**..... 161
  - Top speed**..... 183

- TOP TETHER** ..... 45  
 eyelets ..... 45
- Topping up**  
 Windscreen washer fluid ..... 54
- Tow hitch** ..... 175
- Tow rope** ..... 122
- Towing a trailer** ..... 120
- Towing eye** ..... 121
- Towing the vehicle** ..... 121
- Traffic accident**  
 Data recorder ..... 184  
 Emergency call ..... 21
- Traffic Sign Recognition** ..... 134
- Trailer** ..... 120  
 Alarm system ..... 27  
 Coupling and uncoupling ..... 176  
 Permissible load ..... 121  
 Safe driving ..... 20  
 Swing out the tow bar and back in ..... 175
- Trailer attachment**  
 Vertical load ..... 176
- Trailer coupling**  
 Troubleshooting ..... 176
- Trailer Stability Assist** ..... 125
- Transport**  
 Transporting objects safely ..... 20
- Transporting**  
 tow hitch ..... 175
- Transporting the**  
 roof rack ..... 175
- Travel Assist** ..... 132
- TSA**  
 see Trailer Stability Assist ..... 125
- Turn signal** ..... 49
- Type plate** ..... 181
- Tyre pressure monitor** ..... 159
- Tyres** ..... 153, 154  
 Breakdown kit ..... 157  
 Overview of the labelling ..... 153  
 Pressure ..... 158  
 Snow chains ..... 155  
 Tyre pressure monitor ..... 159  
 Tyre wear indicator ..... 154
- U**
- Umbrella** ..... 171
- Unlocking** ..... 24, 26
- Updating the Infotainment system**  
 see digital version of the manual ..... 5
- USB** ..... 168  
 see digital version of the manual ..... 5
- V**
- Variable loading floor in the boot** ..... 166
- Vehicle battery** ..... 149  
 Charging ..... 149  
 Checking the condition ..... 149  
 Discharge protection ..... 149
- Disconnecting and connecting ..... 149  
 Error ..... 149  
 Safety ..... 18
- Vehicle cleaning**  
 interior space ..... 179
- Vehicle condition** ..... 64
- Vehicle dimensions** ..... 183
- Vehicle driving mode** ..... 119  
 Eco ..... 120  
 Individual ..... 120  
 Normal ..... 120  
 Sport ..... 120
- Vehicle height** ..... 183
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)** ..... 181
- Vehicle length** ..... 183
- Vehicle status** ..... 64
- Vehicle status report** ..... 115
- Vehicle width** ..... 183
- Vest**  
 see reflective vest ..... 161
- VIN**  
 see vehicle identification number ..... 181
- Virtual cockpit**  
 see digital instrument cluster ..... 62
- Voice control - Infotainment Columbus** ..... 84, 85
- W**
- Warning triangle** ..... 161
- Warranty** ..... 185  
 Mobility Warranty ..... 186  
 Optional Extended Warranty ..... 186  
 Rights arising from defective performance ..... 185  
 Warranty for new cars ..... 185
- Waste container** ..... 173
- Water in the fuel filter** ..... 144
- Weight** ..... 182
- Wheels** ..... 153  
 Breakdown ..... 154  
 Change ..... 156  
 Change in pressure ..... 154  
 Cover caps for the screws ..... 159  
 Full wheel covers ..... 159  
 Overview of tyre labelling ..... 153  
 Spare wheel and emergency wheel ..... 155  
 Tyre pressure ..... 158  
 Tyre pressure monitor ..... 159  
 Tyre wear indicator ..... 154
- Wi-Fi**  
 see digital version of the manual ..... 5
- Wi-Fi - Infotainment Columbus** ..... 98, 99
- Wi-Fi - Infotainment Swing** ..... 78
- Window** ..... 29  
 heating ..... 31
- Windscreen washer fluid**  
 How is the washer fluid refilled? ..... 54  
 Level too low ..... 55
- Windscreen washer system**  
 see windscreen wiper and washer ..... 54

**Windscreen wiper and washer**

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Automatic rear window wiper           | 54  |
| Automatic Wiping                      | 54  |
| Fold away windscreen wiper arms       | 55  |
| Refill windscreen washer fluid        | 54  |
| Replace the windscreen wiper blade    | 55  |
| Windscreen washer fluid level too low | 55  |
| <b>Windscreen wipers and washers</b>  | 54  |
| <b>Winter tyres</b>                   | 154 |

**X**

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| XDL + | 125 |
|-------|-----|